



# User's Guide Windows®

For the latest info, go to http://my.okidata.com



Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this document is complete, accurate, and up-to-date. The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for the results of errors beyond its control. The manufacturer also cannot guarantee that changes in software and equipment made by other manufacturers and referred to in this Guide will not affect the applicability of the information in it. Mention of software products manufactured by other companies does not necessarily constitute endorsement by the manufacturer.

While all reasonable efforts have been made to make this document as accurate and helpful as possible, we make no warranty of any kind, expressed or implied, as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained herein.

Copyright © 2003. All rights reserved.



As an ENERGY STAR® Program Participant, the manufacturer has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

This product complies with the requirements of the Council Directives 89/336/EEC (EMC) and 73/23/EEC (LVD) as amended where applicable on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to electromagnetic compatibility and low voltage.

Oki and Microline are registered trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Company Ltd.

ENERGY STAR is a registered trademark of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Hewlett-Packard, HP, and LaserJet are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Microsoft, MS-DOS and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Apple, Macintosh and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Computers Inc.

Other product names and brand names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their proprietors.



# **Contents**

Notes, Cautions, etc	4
Introduction	5
Model summary	5
Features	6
How to use this manual	8
Online usage	8
Printing Pages	9
Getting started	0
Unpacking	
CD-ROM disk contents	
Printer location	2
Printer components	3
Setting up	
Packaging and protective sheet removal	
Toner cartridge installation	
Loading paper	
Manual feed	
Power connection	
Control panel	
Menu settings	
Changing the display language	
Printing the MenuMap4	4
Media settings	
Media recommendations	8
Paper	8
Envelopes49	9
Labels	9
Paper feed and exit50	0
Paper Sizes50	
Paper weights and media settings5	
Printer settings	2
Confirming current settings	
List of menu settings	
List of administrator menu settings	
Setting color tuning from the front panel	
Switching off80	6
Interfaces	7

Windows XP	89
Printer Drivers	89
Which printer driver to use?	89
Enabling installed options in the drivers	90
For additional memory: PostScript driver only	91
For the internal hard disk drive	92
For additional paper trays	94
For the duplex unit	96
For the high capacity feeder	98
For the finisher	100
Changing defaults for paper feed, size and media in the driver	102
Network Printer Status utility	108
Operation	109
Factors that affect color printing	110
Differences between the range of colors	
a monitor or printer can reproduce	110
Viewing conditions	111
Printer driver color settings	111
Monitor settings	
How your software application displays color	
Paper type	
Choosing a color matching method	
RGB or CMYK?	113
Matching Photographic Images	114
Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)	
Printing Vivid Colors	
Color matching: PCL driver	
Color Matching Options	
The Print Color Swatch Utility	
Color matching: PostScript driver	
Color Matching Options	120
OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature:	
PostScript driver only	
To set up ICC profiles:	
Windows ICM color matching	129
Printing multiple pages on one sheet	
(n-up printing)	
N-Up printing using the PostScript driver	
N-Up printing using the PCL driver	131

Printing custom page sizes	.132
Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver	.132
Printing custom pages using the PCL driver	.134
Changing the resolution for a print job	.137
Duplex printing	
(printing on both sides of the paper)	.138
Duplex printing using the PostScript driver	.139
Duplex printing using the PCL driver	.140
Printing booklets	.141
Printing booklets using the PostScript driver	.141
Printing booklets using the PCL driver	.143
Printing watermarks: PCL driver only	.144
Collating	.146
Proof and print	.147
Printing copies	.149
Deleting copies	.149
Secure printing	
(printing confidential documents)	.150
Printing a confidential document from the front panel	152
Deleting the confidential document before printing it	.152
Store to hard disk	.153
To print a stored document	.155
To delete a stored document from the hard disk drive	.155
Printing overlays	.156
Creating documents to use as overlays	
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay	.160
Defining Overlays: PostScript	.162
Defining Overlays: PCL	
Printing posters: PCL driver only	.169
indows 2000	171
Printer Drivers	.171
Which printer driver to use?	.171
Enabling Installed options in the drivers	
For additional memory	.172
For the internal hard disk drive	.174
For additional paper trays	.176
For the duplex unit	.178
For the high capacity feeder	
For the finisher	
CHANGING defaults for paper feed, size and media in the driver.	.184
Network Printer Status utility	189

Operation	
Factors that affect Color Printing	191
Viewing conditions	
Printer driver color settings	192
Monitor settings	192
How your software application displays color	193
Paper type	193
Choosing a color matching method	194
RGB or CMYK?	194
Matching Photographic Images	195
Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)	195
Printing Vivid Colors	196
Color matching: PCL Driver	197
Color Matching Options	197
The Print Color Swatch Utility	200
Color matching: PostScript driver	201
Color Matching Options	201
OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature:	
PostScript driver only	207
To set up ICC profiles:	
Windows ICM color matching	210
Printing multiple pages on one sheet	
(n-up printing)	211
N-Up printing using the PostScript driver	
N-Up printing using the PCL driver	
Printing custom page sizes	213
Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver	
Printing custom pages using the PCL driver	
Changing the resolution for a print job	218
Duplex printing	
(printing on both sides of the paper)	
Duplex printing using the PostScript driver	
Duplex printing using the PCL driver	
Printing booklets	
Printing booklets using the PostScript driver	
Printing booklets using the PCL driver	
Printing watermarks: PCL driver only	
Collating	228

Proof and print	229
Printing copies	231
Deleting copies	231
Secure printing	
(printing confidential documents)	232
Printing a confidential document from the front panel	234
Deleting the confidential document before printing it	234
Store to hard disk	235
To print the stored document	236
To delete a stored job from the hard disk drive	237
Printing overlays	238
What are Overlays?	238
An example of using Overlays	238
To create overlays:	239
Creating documents to use as overlays	240
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay	242
Defining Overlays: PostScript	244
Defining Overlays: PCL	248
Printing posters: PCL driver only	251
Windows Me/98/95	. 252
Printer Drivers	
Which printer driver to use?	
Enabling Installed options in the drivers	
For additional memory	
For the internal hard disk drive	
For additional paper trays	256
For the duplex unit	
For the high capacity feeder	258
Changing defaults for paper feed, size and media in the driver	259
Network Printer Status utility	261
Operation	262
Factors that affect color printing	263
Differences between the range of colors	
a monitor or printer can reproduce	263
Viewing conditions	
Printer driver color settings	264
Monitor settings	
How your software application displays color	
Paper type	
Choosing a color matching method	
RGB or CMYK?	266
Matching Photographic Images	267

Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)	267
Printing Vivid Colors	268
Color matching: PCL Driver	269
Color Matching Options	269
The Print Color Swatch Utility	272
Color matching: PostScript Driver	273
Color Matching Options	273
Windows ICM color matching	281
OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature	282
Printing multiple pages on one sheet	
(n-up printing)	283
N-Up printing using the PostScript driver	283
N-Up printing using the PCL driver	284
Printing custom page sizes	285
Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver	285
Printing custom pages using the PCL driver	287
Changing the resolution for a print job	289
Duplex printing	
(printing on both sides of the paper)	290
Printing booklets:	
PCL only, Windows Me only	
Printing watermarks	
Collating	
Font substitution: PostScript only	297
Proof and print	298
Printing copies	
Deleting copies	301
Secure printing	
(printing confidential documents)	
Printing a confidential document from the front panel	
Deleting the confidential document before printing it	
Store to hard disk	
Printing copies	
Deleting the stored job from the hard disk drive	
Printing overlays	
What are Overlays?	
An example of using Overlays:	
To create overlays:	
Creating documents to use as overlays	
Downloading the print file to use as an overlay	312

Defining Overlays: PostScript	
Defining Overlays: PCL	317
Printing posters: PCL only	320
Windows NT 4.0	. 322
Printer Drivers	322
Which printer driver to use?	322
Enabling Installed options in the drivers	323
For additional memory: PostScript driver only	
For the internal hard disk drive	
For additional paper trays	
For the duplex unit	
For the high capacity feeder	
For the finisher	
Changing defaults for paper feed, size and media in the driver	
Network Printer Status utility	
Operation	
Factors that affect color printing	
Differences between the range of colors	
a monitor or printer can reproduce	343
Viewing conditions	344
Printer driver color settings	
Monitor settings	
How your software application displays color	
Paper type	345
Choosing a color matching method	
RGB or CMYK?	346
Matching Photographic Images	346
Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)	347
Printing Vivid Colors	347
Color matching: PCL Driver	348
Color Matching Options	348
The Print Color Swatch Utility	351
Color matching: PostScript Driver	352
Color Matching Options	352
Printing multiple pages on one sheet	
(n-up printing)	359
N-Up printing using the PostScript driver	359
N-Up printing using the PCL driver	360
Printing custom page sizes	362
Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver	
Printing custom pages using the PCL driver	367
Changing the resolution for a print job	370

	Printing on both sides of the paper	
	(duplex printing)	372
	Duplex printing using the PostScript driver	373
	Duplex printing using the PCL driver	374
	Printing booklets: PCL driver only	375
	Printing booklets using the PCL driver	375
	Printing watermarks: PCL driver only	377
	Collating	379
	Proof and print	
	Printing copies	382
	Deleting copies	382
	Secure printing	
	(printing confidential documents)	383
	Printing a confidential document from the front panel	
	Deleting the confidential document before printing it	386
	Store to hard disk	387
	To print the stored document	389
	To delete a stored document from the hard disk drive	389
	Printing overlays	
	What are Overlays?	
	An example of using Overlays:	
	To create overlays:	
	Creating documents to use as overlays	
	Downloading the print file to use as an overlay	
	Defining Overlays: PostScript	
	Defining Overlays: PCL	
	Printing posters: PCL driver only	401
V	aintenance	. 403
	Adding Paper	403
	Changing the toner cartridge	
	Changing the image drum	
	Changing the transfer belt	414
	Changing the fuser unit	416
	Cleaning the LED heads	419
	Transporting the printer	420
Γı	oubleshooting	
_	LCD messages	
	Paper jams	
	Darallal transmission mode	

Problem solving	434
Paper feed problems	434
Paper jam has been cleared, but printer does not print	434
Problems printing from Windows	435
Cannot configure for parallel connection	435
Cannot configure for USB connection	436
Printout is garbled or incorrect with parallel connection	436
Cannot print	437
Application error or general protection fault is displayed	438
Printing is slow	438
Printer requests paper size change to continue printing	438
Problems with poor quality printing	
Longitudinal white stripes	
Longitudinal fading	
Faint printing	
Fading in patches	
Longitudinal black stripes	
Faint shading on unprinted sections	
Blurred letter edges	
Miscellaneous problems	
The power is on, but the printer does not go online	
Print processing does not start	
Print processing cancels	
Printer makes a strange noise	
An asterisk (*) symbol appears on the display, repeatedly m	
across the first line then the second	
It takes a long time to start printing	
Accessories	
Introduction	
Additional memory	
Installing additional memory	
Internal hard disk drive	
Installing the hard disk drive	
Duplex unit	
Additional paper trays	
Installation	
High capacity feeder (HCF)	
Installing the high capacity feeder	
Finisher	464
Specifications	465

Consumables	469
Toner	469
Drums	469
Fuser units	470
Transfer belt	470
OKI® print media	471
Factory Default Settings	473
Print menu.	
Media menu	
Color menu	
System Config menu	
PCL Emulation menu	476
PPR Emulation menu	477
FX Emulation menu	478
Parallel menu	
USB menu	
Network menu	479
Memory menu	479
System Adjust menu	480
Maintenance menu	481
Usage menu	481
Software Utilities	482
Overview	
Color Swatch Utility	
Color Swatch Samples	
Loading the Utility	
Selecting Colors	484
Color Samples	484
Color Values	484
Creating Custom Swatch Colors	485
PDF Direct Print Utility	486
Starting	487
PDF Version Check	489
Storage Device Manager for Windows	490
Getting Help	490
General Information	
Summary of Storage Device Manager Functions	
Administration	
Using Storage Device Manager	495

Setting Up an Administrative Password	
Creating PostScript Forms	
Creating PCL Macros (Forms)	
Printing the File List	507
Maintaining the Internal Hard Drive and Flash Memory	508
Using Overlays	
General Information	511
Windows 2000 and XP PCL	513
Printing Using Overlays: 2000 PCL	514
Windows Me/98/95 PCL	517
Windows Me/98/95/PostScript	521
Windows NT 4.0 PCL	524
Windows NT 4.0 PostScript	529
PrintSupervision	532
Features	532
Types of Users	533
Typical usage scenarios	533
System Requirements	
Additional Information	534
Network Printer Status Utility	535
To Install	535
To Open	535
Checking the Printer Status	537
Oki LPR Utility	538
How to Install	538
Oki LPR Status Box	539
Additional Information	539
dev	540

# **Notes, Cautions, etc.**

#### **NOTE**

A note appears like this. A note provides additional information to supplement the main text which helps you to use and understand the product.

#### **CAUTION!**

A caution appears like this. A caution provides additional information which, if ignored, may result in equipment malfunction or damage.

#### **WARNING!**

A warning appears like this. A warning provides additional information which, if ignored, may result in a risk of personal injury.

## **Important!**

An important message appears like this. An important message provides supplemental information which can prevent potential problems.

# Introduction

Congratulations on purchasing this OKI Executive Series color printer!

In this chapter you will find a summary of the main features of your printer followed by some advice on how to use this User's Guide to get the most from your printer.

#### **MODEL SUMMARY**

Model	Resolution	Print speed	Network card	Duplex Unit	Memory	Hard disk
ES 3037	600 x 1200 dpi	Letter: 30 ppm color 37 ppm mono Tabloid: 16 ppm color 20 ppm mono	Option	Option (Requires additional memory	128 Mb	Option
ES 3037e	1200 dpi	Letter: 30 ppm color 37 ppm mono Tabloid: 16 ppm color 20 ppm mono	Standard	Standard	320 Mb	Standard

#### **FEATURES**

- Single pass digital technology for high quality, speed and reliability.
- Duplex printing for fast reliable two-sided output (standard on ES 3037e, optional on ES 3037).
- High capacity 10Gb hard disk drive (standard on ES 3037e, optional on ES 3037).
- Versatile paper handling:
  - Standard 550-sheet (20-lb. paper) paper tray
  - Standard 100-sheet (20-lb. paper) multi-purpose tray for paper, card stock, envelopes, labels, etc.
  - Optional 550-sheet paper trays: up to two can be added to expand the paper capacity to 1690 sheets.
  - Optional High Capacity Feeder, mounted on casters, with three 550-sheet trays expanding printer capacity by 1650 sheets (approx.).
- Flexible interfaces with automatic switching:
  - USB
  - High-speed, bi-directional parallel (IEEE-1284)
  - Industry standard network connectivity via internal network interface card.
- Environmentally friendly: the advanced power save mode minimizes power consumption and the separate toner and drum design cuts down on waste.

- Automatic color balance adjustment: in order to ensure consistent output at all times, the machine automatically performs a color check when the machine is switched on, when the top cover is opened and then closed, and adjusts the color balance automatically. It can even be set to adjust the color balance during long print runs.
- Auto media detect: detects the weight of the media being fed through the printer then automatically adjusts the fusing temperature, speed (if necessary) and transfer voltage to ensure correct fusing and print quality.

#### **HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL**

This manual will lead you logically through the unpacking, setup and operation of your printer to help you to make the best use of its many advanced features.

It also includes:

- troubleshooting information
- maintenance guidelines
- instructions for adding optional accessories as your needs evolve

#### **NOTES**

This User's Guide has been written using one printer as a model, and the illustrations/screenshots reflect this.

The information in this manual is supplemented by the extensive online help facility associated with the printer driver software.

#### Online usage

This manual is intended to be read on screen using Adobe Acrobat Reader. Use the navigation and viewing tools provided in Acrobat.

You can access specific information in two ways:

- In the list of bookmarks down the left hand side of your screen, click the topic of interest to jump to the required topic. (If the bookmarks are not available, use the Table of Contents.)
- In the list of bookmarks click Index to jump to the Index. (If the bookmarks are not available, use the Table of Contents.) Find the term of interest in the alphabetically arranged index and click the associated page number to jump to the page containing the subject.

#### **Printing Pages**

The whole book, Individual pages, or sections may be printed. The procedure for printing from Acrobat Reader is:

- 1. From the toolbar, select **File**, then **Print** (or press the Ctrl + P keys).
- 2. Choose which pages you wish to print:
  - a. All pages for the entire manual.
  - **b.** Current page for the page at which you are looking.
  - **c.** Pages from and to for the range of pages you specify by entering their page numbers.
- 3. Click OK.

# **Getting started**

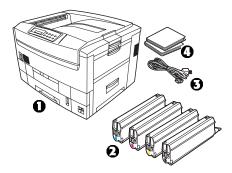
#### UNPACKING

#### **WARNING!**

The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg) without the duplex unit; 172 lbs. (78 kg) with the duplex unit installed (dxn models).

Three (3) people are required to lift the printer safely.

After unpacking the printer and choosing a suitable place to put it, check that all the necessary parts are available to continue:



- 1. The printer.
- 2. 4 toner cartridges (cyan, magenta, yellow and black).
- 3. Power cable
- CD-ROM disks.
- 5. LED lens cleaner (not illustrated).
- **6.** Light-proof plastic bags (not illustrated).
- **7.** Documentation (not illustrated): Setup Guide, Software Installation Guide, Warranty booklet.

Retain all packing materials to facilitate transport.

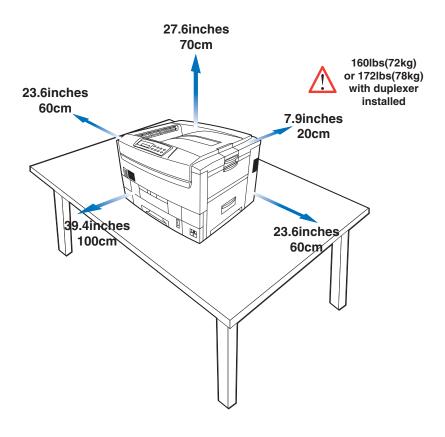
#### **CD-ROM DISK CONTENTS**

The CD-ROM disks supplied with your printer contain the following software:

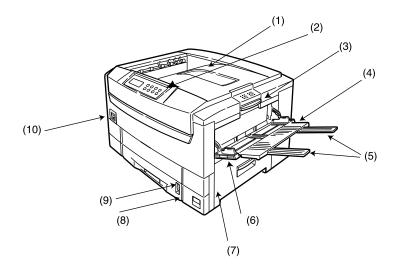
- CD1 Drivers, Software Utilities
- CD2 Manuals

#### PRINTER LOCATION

Place the printer on a flat surface large enough and strong enough to accept the size and weight of the printer. There must be sufficient space around the printer to allow for access and printer maintenance.

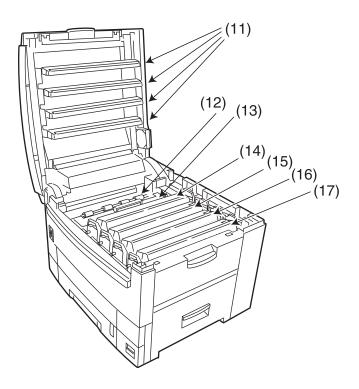


#### PRINTER COMPONENTS



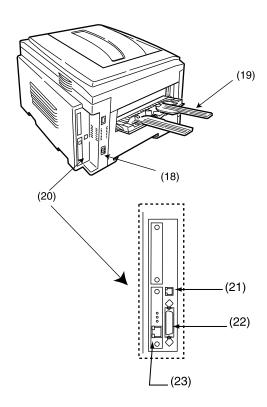
- 1. Top cover
- 2. Control panel
- 3. Top cover release catch
- 4. Multi-purpose (MP) tray (manual feed)
- 5. Paper support extensionPaper guides
- 6. Right side cover
- 7. Paper tray
- 8. Paper level indicator
- 9. Power switch
- **10.** LED heads (4)

## PRINTER COMPONENTS (CONTINUED)



- 11. Discharge roller
- 12. Fuser unit
- 13. Image drum (cyan)
- 14. Image drum (magenta)
- **15.** Image drum (yellow)
- 16. Image drum (black)
- 17. Power connector

## **PRINTER COMPONENTS (CONTINUED)**



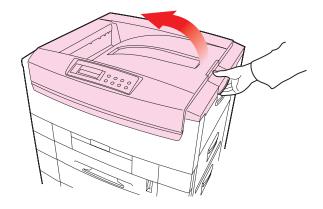
- 18. Straight-through exit paper tray
- 19. Interfaces and card slot
- 20. USB interface connector
- 21. Parallel interface connector
- 22. Network interface card

# **Setting up**

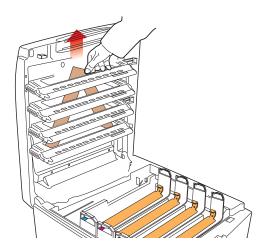
Before connecting this printer to a computer and power supply, the toner cartridges must be installed and paper must be inserted in the paper tray.

#### PACKAGING AND PROTECTIVE SHEET REMOVAL

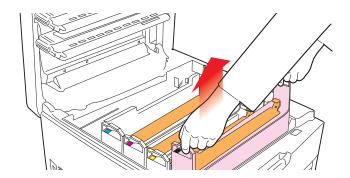
- 1. Remove any adhesive tape and packaging from the printer.
- 2. Using the release handle, open the top cover.



**3.** Remove the LED head restrainer from behind the LED heads in the top cover.



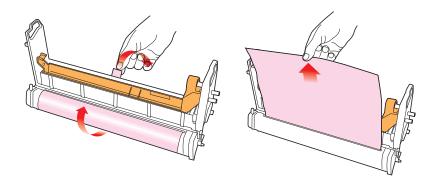
4. Remove the black image drum and place it on a level surface.



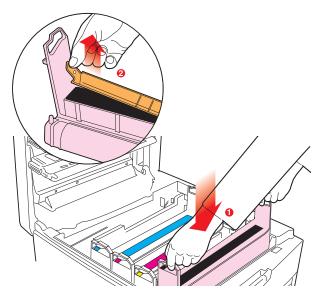
#### **CAUTION!**

- Never expose image drums to light for more than 5 minutes.
- Always hold image drum by the ends.
- Never expose image drums to direct sunlight.
- Never touch the green surface of the drum.

**5.** Remove the protective sheet.



**6.** Put the black image drum back into the printer (1), then push the tab (2) inwards and remove the blanking plate from the drum.



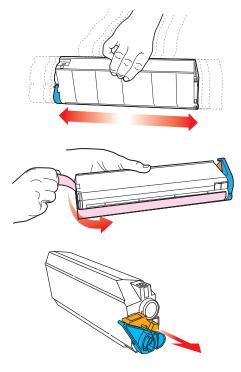
7. Repeat steps 4 through 6 for each color drum

#### TONER CARTRIDGE INSTALLATION

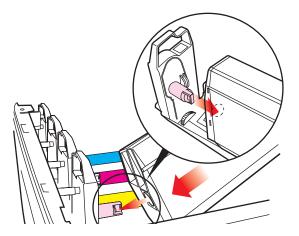
#### **WARNING!**

Take extreme care when handling toner.

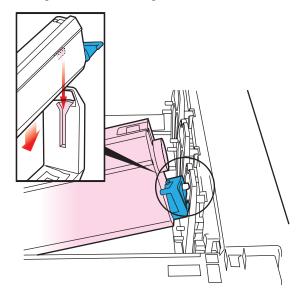
- Toner can be harmful if inhaled, swallowed or if it gets in the eyes.
- · Toner can also stain hands and clothing.
- 1. For each color toner cartridge:
  - a. Remove the cartridge from its package.
  - **b.** Shake the toner cartridge back and forth several times, then holding it horizontally, remove the tape, and then remove the plastic clip from behind the colored lever.



**c.** Insert the toner cartridge in its image drum, left side first, engaging the drum locating peg in the hole in the toner cartridge.



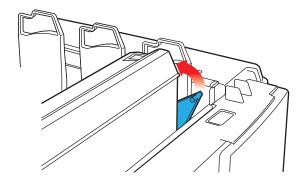
**d.** *Gently* push the toner cartridge down, engaging the locking pin into the groove on the image drum.



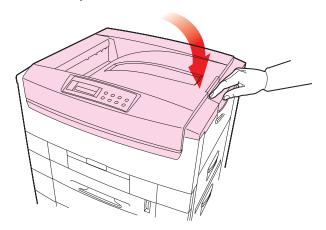
**e.** *Gently* push the colored lever toward the rear of the machine until it stops. This releases the toner into the image drum.

#### **CAUTION!**

The lever should go back easily. If you meet any resistance, stop and push down on the cartridge to be sure that it is firmly in place before attempting to push the lever back.

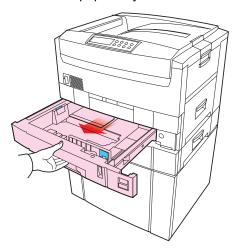


## 2. Close the top cover.

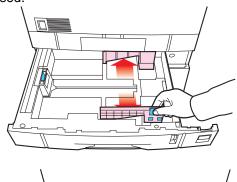


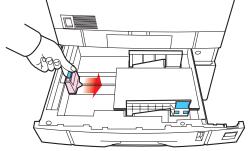
#### **LOADING PAPER**

1. Pull out the paper tray.

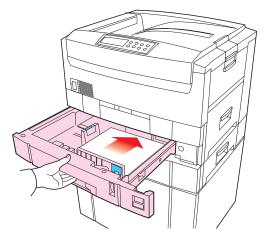


**2.** Adjust the paper guides and rear stopper for the size of paper being used.





3. Close the paper tray gently .



#### **Important!**

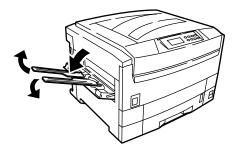
To prevent paper jams:

- Don't leave space between the paper and the paper guides and rear stopper.
- Don't overfill the paper tray. Capacity depends on the type of paper and the paper weight (max. 550 sheets of 20-lb. US Bond—75 g/m²—paper).
- Don't load damaged paper.
- Don't load paper of different sizes, paper quality or thickness at the same time.
- Don't remove the paper tray during printing.

#### **NOTE**

If installed, a lower paper tray cannot be used to print if there is no paper tray inserted above it.

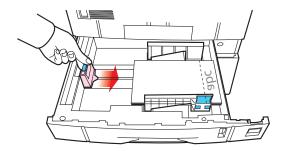
- **4.** For face *down* printing (to the top of the printer), make sure the rear paper exit is *closed*:
  - Paper is stacked in printed order
  - Paper tray capacity is about 500 sheets, depending on paper weight.
- 5. For face up printing (straight-through path), make sure the straight-through paper exit is open and the paper support is extended:
  - Paper is stacked in reverse order.
  - Tray capacity is about 100 sheets, depending on paper weight.



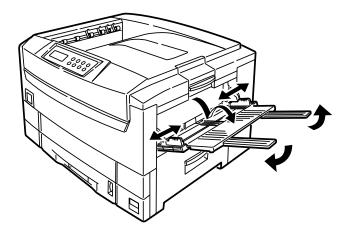
#### **CAUTION!**

- Don't open or close the straight-through exit path while printing, as it may result in a paper jam.
- Always use the straight- through exit path for thick paper (card stock etc.)

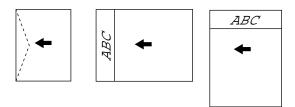
## 6. Load letterhead paper face down:



### MANUAL FEED



- 1. Open the Multi-purpose tray and extend the paper feed guides.
- **2.** Load the paper and adjust the paper guides to the size of the paper being used.
  - Load the paper into the Multi-purpose tray tray with the print face upward.
  - Don't exceed the Paper Full line (about 100 sheets depending on paper weight).
  - Load envelopes or letterhead stationery as shown



### **CAUTION!**

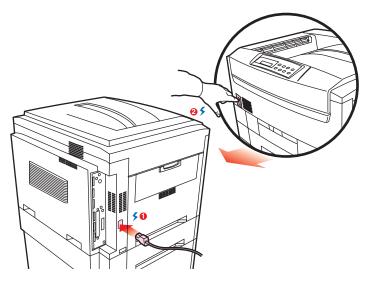
Don't open or close the rear paper exit while printing, as it may result in a paper jam.

### **POWER CONNECTION**

### **WARNING**

Ensure both the printer power switch and the AC supply are switched OFF before connecting the power cable.

1. Connect the power cable (1) to the power socket on the printer, then to a grounded power supply outlet.



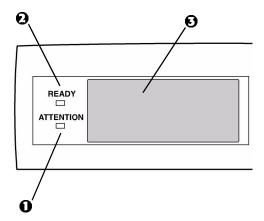
2. Switch the printer ON using the main power switch (2).

The printer will go through its initialization and warm up sequence. When the printer is ready, the READY indicator comes on and stays on (green) and the LCD indicates ONLINE.

### **NOTE**

After installing the new toner cartridges, the message TONER LOW or CHANGE TONER may appear on the display. If this message does not disappear after a few pages have been printed, reinstall the appropriate toner cartridge.

### **CONTROL PANEL**



### 1. Attention indicator (red).

ON indicates that attention is required, but *printing will continue*. FLASHING indicates that attention is required, but *printing will stop*.

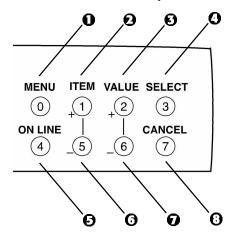
# 2. Ready indicator (green).

ON - ready to receive data. FLASHING indicates processing data or error.

# 3. Liquid crystal display.

(LCD) panel. Two rows of up to 24 alphanumeric characters displaying print status, menu items in menu mode and error messages.

# **CONTROL PANEL (CONTINUED)**



### 1. Menu button.

Press briefly to enter the MENU mode. Press briefly again to select the next menu. Press for more than 2 seconds to scroll through the different menus.

### 2. Item(+) button.

Press briefly to scroll forward to the next menu item.

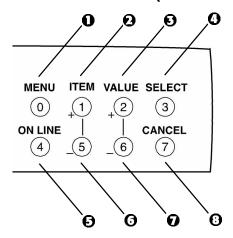
### 3. Value (+) button.

Press briefly to scroll forward to the next value setting for each menu item.

### 4. Select button.

Press briefly to select the menu, item or value indicated on the LCD.

# **CONTROL PANEL (CONTINUED)**



### 5. Online button.

Switches between online and offline status

- When pressed in Menu mode, it returns the printer to on line status.
- When pressed with **DATA PRESENT** displayed, it forces the printer to print out the remaining data in the printer.
- When there is an error message indicating wrong paper size, pressing the ONLINE button forces the printer to print.

# 6. Item (-) button.

Press briefly to scroll backward to the previous menu item.

# 7. Value (–) button.

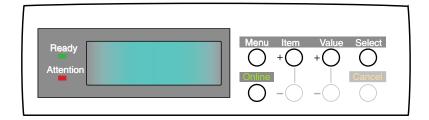
Press briefly to scroll backward to the previous value setting for each menu item.

### 8. Cancel button.

Press to cancel a print job.

### **MENU SETTINGS**

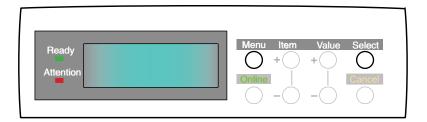
# Changing the display language



- 1. Press the ONLINE button to return the printer to offline status.
- **2.** Press the MENU button repeatedly until **SYSTEM CONFIG MENU** is displayed.
- 3. Then press the SELECT button.
- 4. Press the ITEM button repeatedly until LANGUAGE is displayed.
- **5.** Press the VALUE button repeatedly until the required language is displayed.
- Press the SELECT button.
   An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected language.
- 7. Press the ONLINE button.

# **Printing the MenuMap**

Print a list of menu settings to confirm that the printer is correctly configured.



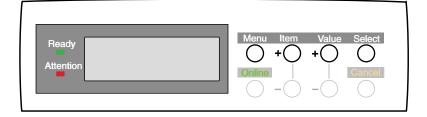
- 1. Make sure there is paper in the paper tray.
- **2.** Press the MENU button until the **INFORMATION MENU** is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- 3. Confirm that **PRINT MENU MAP** is displayed on the LCD.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the menu map.

# **Media settings**

### **NOTE**

- If the settings in the printer differ from those selected on your computer, the printer will not print and the LCD will display an error message.
- The following printer settings are given as a guide only.
   Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the application (page setup).

### Selecting paper feed

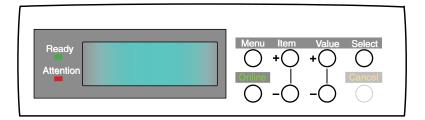


- 1. Press the ONLINE button to place the printer offline.
- **2.** Press the MENU button repeatedly until PRINT MENU is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- 3. Press the ITEM button until PAPER FEED is displayed.
- 4. Press the VALUE button until the required paper feed is displayed, then press the SELECT button. An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper feed.

### **NOTE**

When AUTO TRAYSWITCH is set to ON and more than one paper tray is installed, paper feed automatically switches to the next available paper tray if a tray runs out of paper.

### Selecting the paper size

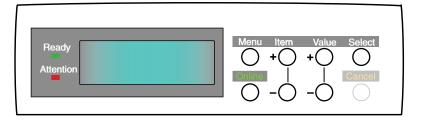


### NOTE

- When using paper trays, standard paper sizes are recognized automatically with CASSETTE SIZE (default setting) selected. Paper size need only be set for A3 Wide, A3 outsize/Nobi, Tabloid Extra and custom paper sizes.
- When using the Multi-Purpose (MP) tray (manual feed), the paper size has to be selected.
  - **1.** Press the ONLINE button to place the printer offline.
  - **2.** Press the MENU button until **PRINT MENU** is displayed, then preset SELECT.
  - **3.** Press either ITEM (+) or (–) button repeatedly until **EDIT SIZE** is displayed.
  - **4.** Press either VALUE (+) or (–) button until the required paper size is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
    - An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper size.
  - Press the ONLINE button to return the printer to ONLINE status.
  - **6.** Select the correct paper settings in the printer driver before printing the file.

### Selecting the media type and weight

Your printer automatically detects paper type and weight. You have the option, however, to override these settings as follows:



### **CAUTION!**

If media type or media weight are not correctly set, print quality deteriorates and the fuser roller may be damaged.

- 1. Press the ONLINE button to place the printer offline.
- **2.** Press the MENU button until **MEDIA MENU** is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- 3. Press the ITEM (+) or (-) button until MEDIA TYPE or MEDIA WEIGHT for the required tray is displayed.
- **4.** Press the VALUE (+) or (–) button until the required paper type or weight is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
  - An asterisk (\*) appears next to the selected paper type or weight.
- **5.** Press the ONLINE button to return the printer back to online status.

Select the correct paper settings in the printer driver before printing the file.

### MEDIA RECOMMENDATIONS

We recommend the following guidelines when selecting paper and envelopes for use in this printer:

### **CAUTION**

Print media must be able to withstand 446°F (230°C) for 0.2 second.

### **Paper**

- For recommended papers see your Handy Reference Guide.
- Paper should be stored flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat sources.
- Don't use damp, damaged or curled paper.
- The use of heavily laid or textured paper will seriously affect the life of the image drum and give poor print quality. Print quality can be improved by changing the media setting to 'Ultra Heavy.' However, this will reduce the output speed and prevent the use of the duplex option.
- Don't use very smooth, shiny or glossy paper.
- Don't use heavily embossed headed paper, very rough paper or paper that has a large grain difference between the two sides.
- Don't use paper with perforations, cut-outs or ragged edges.
- Don't use carbon paper, NCR paper, photosensitive paper, pressure sensitive paper or thermal transfer paper.

# **Envelopes**

- Use only recommended envelopes (OKI 52206301 and 52206302): see page 472.
- Envelopes should be stored flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat sources.
- Don't use envelopes with windows or metal clasps.
- Don't use envelopes with self sealing flaps.
- Don't use damp, damaged or curled paper envelopes.

### Labels

- For recommended labels see your Handy Reference Guide.
- Use only labels designed for use in color laser printers and photocopiers.
- Labels should cover entire carrier sheet.
- Carrier sheet or adhesive must not be exposed to any part of the printer.

### PAPER FEED AND EXIT

Selection of which paper feed and which paper exit to use for printing and whether simplex (single sided) or duplex (double sided) printing is available, depends upon the paper size, media weight and media type that is used. Please refer to the following tables:

# **Paper Sizes**

	Feed		Exit	
Paper size	Trays 1, 2, 3, 4, 5	MP Tray Manual		Top (Face down)
A3	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
A4	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
A5	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sª	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
A6	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
B4	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
B5	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Letter	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Legal-14	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Legal-13.5	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Legal-13	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Executive	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
A3 Wide	S, Da	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
A3 Outsize/Nobi	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sª	Sª	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Tabloid	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Tabloid Extra	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sa	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
Envelopes	b	Sª	S <sup>a</sup>	b
Custom <sup>c</sup>	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b

a. S = Simplex; D = Duplex (printing on both sides of the paper)

b. Not usable.

Width 3 to 12.9 inches (76.2 to 328 mm); height 5 to 47½ inches (127 to 1200 mm). Must be defined in the printer driver before printing.

# Paper weights and media settings

		Feed		Exit	
	Media weight	Trays 1, 2, 3	MP Tray (Manual)	Straight-Thru (face up)	Top (face down)
Paper, US Bond (	Metric)				
17 lb. (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Light	Sa	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>
18 to 19 lb. (68-71 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium light	S <sup>a</sup>	Sª	S <sup>a</sup>	Sª
20 to 24 lb. (75-90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sª	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
25 to 27 lb. (91-104 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Medium heavy	S, D <sup>a</sup>	Sª	S, D <sup>a</sup>	S, D <sup>a</sup>
28 to 32 lb. (105-122 g/m²)	Heavy	b	Sª	S <sup>a</sup>	Sª
33 to 54 lb. (123-203 g/m²)	Ultra heavy	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
Transparencies: N	/ledia Weight	Ignored			
Set MediaType = Transparency	(Ignored)	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
Labels					
0.1 to 0.17 mm thick	Medium Heavy	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b
0.17 to 0.2 mm thick	Ultra Heavy	b	S <sup>a</sup>	S <sup>a</sup>	b

a. S = Simplex; D = Duplex (printing on both sides of the paper)

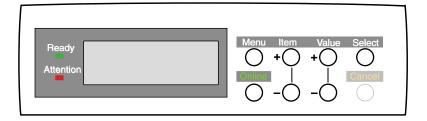
b. Not usable.

### **PRINTER SETTINGS**

# **Confirming current settings**

Current menu settings can be confirmed by printing the MenuMap: see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44.

# Changing the settings.



- 1. Make sure that paper is loaded into the paper tray.
- 2. Press the ONLINE button to place the printer offline.
- Press the MENU button until the INFORMATION MENU is available.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button until the display prompts you to print the MenuMap.
- 5. Press the SELECT button to print the menu map.

The printer will return to online status when the menu map is printed.

### LIST OF MENU SETTINGS

Listed in the following tables are the available printer settings. The default settings for the printer are in **bold** text.

### **Print Jobs Menu**

This menu only appears if the hard disk drive is installed.

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
ENTER PASSWORD	***	Sets password using a four-digit number (0~7). This item is also displayed even when OP MENU "ALL CATEGORY" is set to DISABLE in the Admin. menu.
SELECT JOB	No jobs; All jobs; File name 1 to nn	Selects printing job for Secure Print or Proof and Print.  This item is also displayed even when OP MENU "ALL CATEGORY" is set to DISABLE in the Admin. menu.

## **Information Menu**

Item	Value	Description
PRINT MENU MAP	Execute	Prints menu list.
PRINT FILE LIST	Execute	Prints job file list.
PRINT PCL FONT	Execute	Prints PCL font list.
PRINT PS FONT	Execute	Prints PostScript font list
PRINT IBM PPR FONT	Execute	Prints an IBM PPR font list.
PRINT EPSON FX FONT	Execute	Prints an Epson FX font list.
PRINT DEMO12	Execute	Prints demonstration page
PRINT ERROR LOG	Execute	Prints error log.

# **Test Print Menu**

Item	Value	Description
PRINT ID CHECK PATTERN	Execute	Prints ID check pattern to detect bad ID. Displayed only if "TEST PRINT MENU" of the System Maintenance Menu is set to ENABLE.

# Shutdown menu

Item	Value	Description
SHUTDOWN START	Execute	Shut down sequence for the printer, and is recommended to be used when the hard disk is installed to prevent any loss of data.

# **Print Menu**

Item	Value	Description
COPIES	<b>1</b> to 999	Sets the number of copies.
DUPLEX	On; <b>Off</b>	Specifies two-sided (duplex) printing if the optional duplex unit is installed.
BINDING	<b>Long edge</b> ; Short edge	Sets binding for duplex printing. Only displayed if duplex is ON.
OUTPUT BIN	Face Up; Face Down	Specifies output bin.
JOB OFFSET	On; Off	Sets job offset on or off.
PAPER FEED	<b>Tray 1</b> ; Tray 2; Tray 3; Tray 4; Tray 5; MP Tray	Selects source of paper feed. Tray 2 to 5 only displayed if installed.
AUTO TRAY SWITCH	On; Off	Automatic switching to next tray when tray in use empties.
TRAY SEQUENCE	<b>Down</b> ; Up; Paper feed tray	Specifies selection order priority for switching Auto Tray Select/Auto Tray Switch.
MP TRAY USAGE	Normal tray; High priority tray; Feed when mismatching; Do not use	Specifies MP tray usage.  Normal tray: (Tray select/switch) Use as a normal tray. High priority tray: (Valid with Tray select only). If there is paper in the MP tray and Duplex is not specified, the printer uses the MP tray. Feed when mismatching. When a paper mismatch occurs (i.e. the tray's paper size/media type does not match the print data), a paper request is issued to the MP Tray. If the data is for Duplex print, a specified tray is used instead of the MP tray.  Do not use. Even if auto switching, MP Tray will not be used. If MP Tray is designated in Paper Feed, printer behaves as though Normal Tray is selected.
MEDIA CHECK	Enable; Disable	Sets whether the printer checks the matching of paper size to that of the tray. Only standard sizes are checked.
TRANSPARENCY DETECT	Auto; Disable	Enable/Disable the transparency auto detect function.

# **Print Menu**

Item	Value	Description
RESOLUTION	ES 3037 - 600 x 1200 dpi; 600 dpi ES 3037e -1200 dpi, Fast 1200 dpi, 600 dpi	Selects print resolution.
TONER SAVE MODE	ON; <b>OFF</b>	ON: Enables Toner Save mode. OFF: Disables Toner Save mode.
MONO-PRINT SPEED	Auto; Color speed; Normal speed	Selects monochrome printing speed. <u>Auto</u> : Prints at the most appropriate speed for page process. <u>Color</u> : Prints always at the color print speed. <u>Normal</u> : Prints always at the monochrome print speed.
ORIENTATION	Portrait; Landscape	Sets page orientation for printing.
LINE PER PAGE	5 to 128. Default = <b>60</b> .	Sets the number of lines that can be printed on a page.
EDIT SIZE	Cassette size; Letter Short Edge; Letter Long Edge; Executive; Legal 14; Legal 13.5; Legal 13; Tabloid Extra; Tabloid; A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; A3; A4 Short Edge; A4 Long Edge; A5; A6; B4; B5 Short Edge; B5 Long Edge; Custom; Com-9* envelope; Com-10* envelope; Monarch* envelope; DL* Envelope; C5* Envelope *Use long edge feed.	Cassette size is selected when using standard sized paper in the paper tray. Edit size is only used when printing one page size onto a different paper size, e.g. A6 onto A4, edit size would be set to A6, but actual paper in paper tray is A4. Invalid in PostScript emulation.

# **Media Menu**

Item	Value	Description
TRAY 1 MEDIATYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Transparency; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough.	Selects the paper type for Tray 1.
TRAY 1 MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Sets the media weight for Tray 1
TRAY 2 MEDIATYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Sets the media type for optional Tray 2. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 2 MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the media weight for optional Tray2. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 3 MEDIATYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Sets the media type for optional Tray 3. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 3 MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the media weight for optional Tray 3. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 4 MEDIATYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Transparency; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough.	Sets the media type for optional Tray 4. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 4 MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the media weight for optional Tray 4. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 5 MEDIATYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Sets the media type for optional Tray 5. (Only displayed if installed)
TRAY 5 MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Selects the media weight for optional Tray 5. (Only displayed if installed)

# Media Menu (continued)

Item	Value	Description
MP TRAY PAPER SIZE	A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; A3; A4 Short Edge; A4 Long Edge; A5; A6; B4; B5 Short Edge; B5 Long Edge; Legal 14; Legal 13.5; Legal 13; Tabloid Extra; Tabloid; Letter Short Edge; Letter Long Edge; Executive; Custom; Com-9 envelope LEF; Com-10 envelope LEF; Monarch envelope LEF; DL Envelope LEF; C5 Envelope LEF; C4 Envelope LEF	Sets the paper size for the multipurpose paper tray. LEF = Long Edge Feed
MP TRAY MEDIA TYPE	Plain; Letterhead; Transparency; Labels; Bond; Recycled; Card stock; Rough	Selects the paper type for multipurpose paper tray.
MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT	Auto; Light; Medium Light; Medium; Medium Heavy; Heavy; Ultra Heavy	Sets the paper weight for the multipurpose (MP) paper tray.
UNIT OF MEASURE	inches; Millimeter	Sets the units of measurement for custom paper size.
X DIMENSION (INCH)	3 inches to 12.9 inches Default = <b>8.5 inches</b>	Sets the width of custom paper. For these dimensions to work, the MP tray paper size must be set to custom.
Y DIMENSION (INCH)	5 inches to 35.5 inches Default = <b>11 inches</b>	Sets the length of custom paper. For these dimensions to work, the MP tray paper size must be set to custom.

# **Color Menu**

Item	Value	Description
AUTO DENSITY MODE	Auto; Manual.	Select whether density adjustment and Toner Response Curve (TRC) compensation is automatic.  Auto: Density adjustment is automatically run under specified conditions, and reflected in the TRC compensation.  Manual: Density adjustment is done manually (see page 83).
ADJUST DENSITY	Execute	If EXECUTE is selected, the printer will immediately adjust density and reflect it in the TRC compensation. Density adjustment must be executed when the printer is idling. It may become invalid if executed in any other state.
COLOR TUNING	Print pattern	Prints the pattern for the user to manually adjust TRC. Ordinarily this function is not needed because TRC is automatically adjusted. This function permits TRC adjustment to your requirement by using the adjustment menu of HIGHLIGHT, MID-TONE, and DARK for each of CMYK. See page 83.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK HIGHLIGHT	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	Adjusts HIGHLIGHT (light area) of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black TRC. Plus indicates adjustment toward a darker level and minus toward lighter.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK MID-TONE	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	Adjusts MID-TONE of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black TRC. Plus indicates adjustment toward a darker level and minus toward lighter.
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK DARK	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	Adjusts DARK of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black TRC. Plus indicates adjustment toward a darker level and minus toward lighter.

# **Color Menu (continued)** The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
CYAN, MAGENTA, YELLOW OR BLACK DARKNESS	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-4-3-2-1	Adjusts Cyan, Magenta, Yellow or Black engine density. The Darkness settings for each of CMYK will be reflected as offset values (additions) to the corrections through the Adjust Density/TRC Compensation function.
ADJUST REGISTRATION	Execute	When this menu is selected, the printer performs an Auto Adjust Registration.  Must be executed in the idle state (Auto Registration OFF).
CYAN REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	Makes a fine adjustment to image registration in Cyan, Magenta or Yellow against Black in the horizontal
MAGENTA REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	direction. The adjustment is reflected as an offset (addition) value to the corrections through Auto Color Registration Correction. Values are
YELLOW REGISTRATION - FINE ADJUST	<b>0</b> +1+2+3-3-2-1	adjusted in increments of 1/1200th of an inch. Example: if the paper movement is upward - if a value is increased (+) then it means the image moves downward in relation to it.
INK SIMULATION	Off; SWOP	The printer has its own process simulation generator which simulates standard colors in the printer. This function is enabled only with Postscript language jobs.
INK LIMIT	Dark; Medium; Light	Selects the limit of the toner layer thickness. If paper curl occurs in DARK printing, selecting MEDIUM or LIGHT sometimes helps reduce curl.

# **Color Menu (continued)** The default settings are **bold**.

DENSITY against the CMY100% TRC compensation. Ordinarily, the TRC compensation function controls the	Item	Value	Description
output is not always enabled. Selecting ENABLE will allow 100% output. In actual printing, the TRC		<b>Disable</b> ; enable	compensation. Ordinarily, the TRC compensation function controls the appropriate print density; thus, 100% output is not always enabled.  Selecting ENABLE will allow 100% output. In actual printing, the TRC values, too, are controlled by Color Matching. This function is used for special purposes; for example, to specify the color for CMYK color

# **System configuration menu** The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME	5 min; 15 min; 30 min; <b>60 min</b> ; 240 min	Sets the time before printer enters power save mode.
PERSONALITY	Auto emulation; PCL; IBM PPR III XL; Epson FX; AdobePostScrip	Selects the printer emulation language. Note: the only printer languages that can be selected are those enabled in the <b>Personality</b> section of the <b>Maintenance menu</b> .
USB PS-PROTOCOL	ASCII RAW	Specifies PostScript (PS) communication protocol mode of data from USB. (In RAW mode, Ctrl-T is invalid.)
NETWORK PS PROTOCOL	ASCII RAW	Specifies PS communication protocol mode of data from OkiLAN 6200e Plus. (In RAW mode, Ctrl-T is invalid.)
CLEARABLE WARNING	ON; Job	PCL emulation: Sets the time before deleting error messages. If On, press Error Delete switch to display error. If Job, error remains displayed until next print job is received.  PS emulation: Error messages are only shown during job regardless of setting.
AUTO CONTINUE	On; <b>Off</b>	Sets the printer to recover automatically after a memory overflow or print overrun.
MANUAL TIMEOUT	<b>60 sec</b> ; 30 sec; Off	Sets the time between requesting that paper is inserted and when the print job is cancelled should paper not be inserted.  Only works in PostScript mode.
WAIT TIMEOUT	Off; 5 sec to 300 sec; default = <b>40 sec</b>	Sets the time between receiving the last byte of data and the page being automatically ejected. Only works in PCL mode. In PS mode the job will be cancelled.

# System configuration menu (continued) The default settings are bold.

Item	Value	Description
LOW TONER	Continue; Stop	If set to CONTINUE, allows printing to continue when Low toner is displayed. If STOP is selected - when Low toner is displayed, the printer goes off line.
JAM RECOVERY	ON; OFF	Sets whether or not printing will continue after a paper jam has been cleared. If set to OFF, the print job that was being printed when the paper jam occurred will be cancelled after clearing the paper jam. When set to ON, the print job will continue after the jam has been cleared.
ERROR REPORT	ON; <b>Off</b>	When set to ON, prints an error report when internal error occurs. Only works in PostScript mode.
LANGUAGE	English; German; French; Italian; Spanish; Swedish; Norwegian; Danish; Dutch; Turkish; Portuguese; Polish	Selects the printer display language.

# **PCL** emulation

Item	Value	Description
FONT SOURCE	Resident; DIMM0; Downloaded	Selects location of the PCL font used. <u>DIMM0</u> is displayed only when font DIMM ROM exists in the slot. <u>Downloaded</u> only appears if fonts have been downloaded to the printer.
FONT NO.	<b>1000</b> , C001, S001	Sets the PCL font number.  I = internal (resident font); I000 = Courier.  C = Font stored in the printer's Flash memory.  S = downloaded soft font, stored on the printer's internal hard disk drive. Applies only to printers with a hard disk drive installed.
FONT PITCH	0.44 cpi to 99.99 cpi in 0.01 cpi increments Default = <b>10.00 cpi</b>	Sets the font width in characters per inch. Only displayed if the font is a fixed spacing outline font.
FONT HEIGHT	4.00 to 999.75 point, in 0.25 point increments Default = <b>12.00 point</b>	Sets the font point size. Applies only to fixed fonts (does not apply to proportional fonts).

# **PCL** emulation (continued)

Item	Value	Description
SYMBOL SET	PC-8, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC-852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Blt, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, Wingdings, Dingbats MS, Symbol, OCR-A, OCR-B, HP ZIP, USPSFIM, USPSSTP, USPSZIP, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek-437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek-928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, IBM-437, IBM-850, IBM-860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO-17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO-84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Set2 US,	Selects a PCL character symbol set

# **PCL** emulation (continued)

Item	Value	Description
A4 PRINT WIDTH	78 column; 80 column	If you are printing a letter size document on an A4 size sheet, select 80 column. This condenses the print to fit on the slightly narrower A4 sheet, without changing the line breaks.
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF; ON	Selects whether or not to print pages that contain no data (white pages), PCL mode.
CR FUNCTION	CR; CR+LF	Sets functionality on receipt of CR code in PCL mode.
LF FUNCTION	<b>LF</b> ; LF+CR	Sets functionality on receipt of LF code in PCL mode.
PRINT MARGIN	Normal; 1/5 inch; 1/6 inch	Sets unprintable paper area (margin). Normal: PCL emulation compatible 1/5 inch: domestic model emulation. 1/6 inch: HIPER-W emulation.
TRUE BLACK	OFF; ON	PCL: Sets whether to use Composite Black (CMYK mixed) or Pure Black (K only) for the black (100%) in image data. OFF: Mode using Composite Black. ON: Mode using Pure Black (not valid with PostScript).
PEN WIDTH ADJUST	ON; OFF	IN PCL, when switched ON, emphasizes the pen width to improve the appearance of lines specified with minimum width.

# **PPR Emulation Menu**

Item	Value	Description
CHARACTER PITCH	<b>10 CPI</b> ; 12 CPI; 17 CPI; 20 CPI; PROPORTIONAL	Specifies character pitch in IBM PPR emulation.
FONT CONDENSE	<b>12CPI TO 20CPI</b> ; 12CPI TO 12CPI	Specifies 12CPI pitch for Condense Mode.
CHARACTER SET	Set 1; <b>Set 2</b>	Specifies a character set.
SYMBOL SET	PC-8, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC- 852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Blt, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-14 JASC, ISO-15 Ita, ISO-16 Por, ISO- 17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO- 84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek- 437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek- 928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, IBM-437, IBM-850, IBM- 860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9	Specifies a symbol set.

# PPR Emulation Menu (continued)

Item	Value	Description
LETTER 0 STYLE	Disable; Enable	Specifies the style that replaces 9BH with o and 9DH with a zero.
ZERO CHARACTER	Normal; Slashed	Sets the zero to be slashed or unslashed.
LINE PITCH	<b>6 LPI</b> ; 8 LPI	Specifies the line spacing.
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF; ON	Specifies whether or not the printer ejects a blank sheet.  Not available with duplex operation.
CR FUNCTION	CR; CR+LF	Sets functionality on receipt of CR code.
LF FUNCTION	<b>LF</b> ; LF+CR	Sets functionality on receipt of LF code.
LINE LENGTH	80 COLUMN; 136 COLUMN	Specifies the number of characters per line.
FORM LENGTH	<b>11 INCH</b> ; 11.7 INCH; 12 INCH	Specifies the length of paper.
TOF POSITION	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 INCH, in 0.1-inch increments	Specifies the distance of print from the top edge of the paper.
LEFT MARGIN	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 INCH, in 0.1-inch increments	Specifies the distance of print from the left hand edge of the paper.
FIT TO LETTER	Disable; <b>Enable</b>	Sets the printing mode that can fit print data, equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines), in the LETTER-size printable area.
TEXT HEIGHT	Same; Diff	Sets the height of a character. SAME: Regardless of CPI, same height. DIFF: As CPI, character heights vary.
CONT PAPER MODE	<b>Off</b> ; On	Sets the edit direction of paper to landscape.

# **FX** emulation

Item	Value	Description
CHARACTER PITCH	<b>10 CPI;</b> 12 CPI; 17 CPI; 20 CPI; PROPORTIONAL	Specifies character pitch in this emulation.
CHARACTER SET	Set 1; <b>Set 2</b>	Specifies a character set.
SYMBOL SET	PC-8, PC-8 Dan/Nor, PC-8 TK, PC-775, PC-850, PC- 852, PC-855, PC-857 TK, PC-858, PC-866, PC-869, PC-1004, Pi Font, Plska Mazvia, PS Math, PS Text, Roman-8, Roman-9, Roman Ext, Serbo Croat1, Serbo Croat2, Spanish, Ukrainian, VN Int'l, VN Math, VN US, Win 3.0, Win 3.1 Blt, Win 3.1 Cyr, Win 3.1 Grk, Win 3.1 Heb, Win 3.1 L1, Win 3.1 L2, Win 3.1 L5, ISO Swedish1, ISO Swedish2, ISO Swedish3, ISO-2 IRV, ISO-4 UK, ISO-6 ASC, ISO-10 S/F, ISO-11 Swe, ISO-16 Por, ISO- 17 Spa, ISO-21 Ger, ISO-25 Fre, ISO-57 Chi, ISO-60 Nor, ISO-61 Nor, ISO-69 Fre, ISO- 84 Por, ISO-85 Spa, Kamenicky, Legal, Math-8, MC Text, MS Publish, PC Ext D/N, PC Ext US, PC Set1, PC Set2 D/N, PC Set2 US, Bulgarian, CWI Hung, DeskTop, German, Greek- 437, Greek-437 Cy, Greek- 928, Hebrew NC, Hebrew OC, IBM-437, IBM-850, IBM- 860, IBM-863, IBM-865, ISO Dutch, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, ISO L6, ISO L9	Specifies a symbol set.
LETTER 0 STYLE	Disable; Enable	Specifies the style that replaces 9BH with o and 9DH with a zero.

# FX emulation (continued)

Item	Value	Description
ZERO CHARACTER	Normal; Slashed	Sets the zero to be slashed or unslashed.
LINE PITCH	<b>6 LPI</b> ; 8 LPI	Specifies the line spacing.
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF; ON	Specifies whether or not the printer ejects a blank sheet.  Not available with duplex operation.
CR FUNCTION	CR; CR+LF	Sets functionality on receipt of CR code.
LINE LENGTH	80 COLUMN; 136 COLUMN	Specifies the number of characters per line.
FORM LENGTH	<b>11 inch</b> ; 11.7 inch; 12 inch	Specifies the length of paper.
TOF POSITION	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 inch in 0.01-inch increments	Specifies the distance of print from the top edge of the paper.
LEFT MARGIN	<b>0.0</b> to 1.0 inch in 0.01-inch increments	Specifies the distance of print from the left hand edge of the paper.
FIT TO LETTER	Disable; <b>Enable</b>	Sets the printing mode that can fit print data, equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines), in the LETTER-size printable area.
TEXT HEIGHT	Same; Diff	Sets the height of a character. SAME: Regardless of CPI, same height. DIFF: As CPI, character heights vary.
CONT PAPER MODE	Off; On	Sets edit direction of paper to landscape.

# Parallel menu

The defaults are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PARALLEL	Enable; Disable	Selects parallel (Centronics) interface.
BI-DIRECTION	Enable; Disable	Selects bi-directional communication.
ECP	Enable; Disable	Selects ECP mode.
ACK WIDTH	NARROW; MEDIUM; WIDE)	Sets ACK width for compatible reception: Narrow = $0.5 \mu S$ Medium = $1.0 \mu S$ Wide = $3.0 \mu S$
ACK/BUSY TIMING	ACK-in-Busy; ACK-while-Busy	Sets output order for ACK and BUSY during reception. ACK IN BUSY: BUSY=LOW to the end of the ACK pulse ACK WHILE BUSY: BUSY=LOW to the centre of the ACK pulse.
I-PRIME	3 micro-sec; 50 micro- sec; <b>Disable</b>	Sets or disables the i-Prime signal
OFFLINE RECEIVE	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	When set to Enable, this function maintains reception without changing the interface signal, even though an alarm occurs.  The interface stays open even if the ON LINE button is pressed.  The interface issues a BUSY signal only when the receive buffer is full or when a service call occurs.

# **USB** menu

Item	Value	Description
USB	Enable; Disable	Selects USB interface.
SOFT RESET	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	Selects use of soft reset command.
OFFLINE RECEIVE	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	When set to Enable, this function maintains reception without changing the interface signal, even if an alarm occurs. The interface stays open even if the ON LINE button is pressed. The interface issues a BUSY signal only when the receive buffer is full or when a service call occurs.

### **Network menu**

Only appears if the network card is installed.

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
TCP/IP	Enable; Disable	Selects TCP/IP protocol.
NETWARE	Enable; Disable	Selects Netware protocol.
ETHERTALK	Enable; Disable	Selects EtherTalk protocol.
NETBEUI	Enable; Disable	Selects NetBEUI protocol.
FRAME TYPE	<b>Auto</b> ; 802.2; 802.3 Ether-II; Snap	Selects Ethernet frame type.
DHCP/BOOTP	Enable; Disable	Selects whether selection of DHCP/BOOP is automatic.
RARP	Enable; <b>Disable</b>	Selects whether selection of RARP is automatic.
IP ADDRESS	XXX.XXX.XXX	Configures IP address of 12 alphanumeric characters.
SUBNET MASK	XXX.XXX.XXX	Configures subnet mask of 12 alphanumeric characters.
GATEWAY ADDRESS	XXX.XXX.XXX	Configures gateway address of 12 alphanumeric characters.
PRINT SETTINGS	ON; <b>OFF</b>	Selects printing of network menu map.
INITIALIZE	ON; <b>OFF</b>	Selects network initialization.

# **Memory menu**

Item	Value	Description
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE	<b>Auto</b> ; OFF; 0.5 MB; 1 MB; 2 MB; 4 MB; 8 MB; 16 MB; 32 MB	Sets the size of the receive buffer and depends on the amount of memory installed in the printer.
RESOURCE SAVE	AUTO; <b>Off</b> ; 0.5 MB; 1 MB; 2 MB; 4 MB; 8 MB; 16 MB; 32 MB	Set the size of the font cache area and depends on the amount of memory installed in the printer.
FLASH INITIALIZE	Execute	Initializes flash memory if installed.

**Memory menu**The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PS FLASH RESIZE	0% [n.n MB] TO 90% [n.n MB], in 10% increments	Changes the size of the flash memory area. "n.n" indicates the actual size in MB.  Note: Special data is stored in the Flash Memory, therefore you cannot specify 100%.

#### **CAUTION!**

The Disk Maintenance Menu can be used to initialize the printer's internal hard disk drive, to reassign the partition contents, or to reformat the partitions.

Unless you know what you are doing, please avoid this section of the Menu.

It is recommended that disk maintenance be done through the OKI Storage Device Manager software by the System Administrator, or by someone who is knowledgeable in this area.

#### Disk Maintenance Menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
HDD INITIALIZE	EXECUTE	Partitions hard disk and formats each partition. Appears only if hard disk drive is installed.
PARTITION SIZE	nnn% / mmm% / xxx%	Sets usage of hard disk drive partitions: nnn = Common mmm = PCL xxx = PS Range for each partition: 1 to 98% in 1% increments. nnn + mmm + xxx = 100%.
HDD FORMATTING	PCL, COMMON, PS	Formats specified partition.

**System adjust menu** The default settings are **bold**.

Adjusts overall print position horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Y ADJUST  O.00 MM; Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and -2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments  Adjusts overall print position vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.	Item	Value	Description
Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and -2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments  DUPLEX X ADJUST  DUPLEX Y ADJUST  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face horizontally in 0.20 increments.	X ADJUST	Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and - 2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm	
Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and -2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments  DUPLEX Y ADJUST  O.00 MM; Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and -2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Adjusts overall print position of print face vertically in 0.20 increments.  Sets Tray 1 large paper size.  TRAY 1 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 large paper size.  Sets Tray 2 large paper size.  Sets Tray 3 large paper size.  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 large paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 large paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	Y ADJUST	Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and - 2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm	
Range +0.25 TO +2.0  MM and -2.0 TO -  0.25 MM in 0.25 mm increments  TRAY 1 A3 NOBI PAPER  Tabloid extra  TRAY 1 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 1 legal paper size.  TRAY 2 A3 NOBI PAPER  Tabloid extra  TRAY 2 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  TRAY 3 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 3 large paper size.  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size.  Conly displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	DUPLEX X ADJUST	Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and - 2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm	print face horizontally in 0.20
Tabloid extra  TRAY 1 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 1 legal paper size.  TRAY 2 A3 NOBI PAPER  Tabloid extra  TRAY 2 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 large paper size.  TRAY 3 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 3 large paper size.  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 large paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	DUPLEX Y ADJUST	Range +0.25 TO +2.0 MM and - 2.0 TO - 0.25 MM in 0.25 mm	print face vertically in 0.20
TRAY 2 A3 NOBI PAPER Tabloid extra  TRAY 2 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  TRAY 3 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 large paper size.  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 large paper size.  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL			Sets Tray 1 large paper size.
Tabloid extra  TRAY 2 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.  TRAY 3 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 large paper size.  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 1 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14</b> ; Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 1 legal paper size.
TRAY 3 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 large paper size.  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL			Sets Tray 2 large paper size.
Tabloid extra  TRAY 3 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.  TRAY 4 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 2 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14</b> ; Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 2 legal paper size.
TRAY 4 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size.  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size.  (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 3 A3 NOBI		Sets Tray 3 large paper size.
Tabloid extra  TRAY 4 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.  TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size. (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 3 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14</b> ; Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 3 legal paper size.
TRAY 5 A3 NOBI  A3 Nobi; A3 Wide; Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size. (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 5 large paper size. Sets Tray 5 legal paper size. (Solve Tray 5 legal paper size)	TRAY 4 A3 NOBI		Sets Tray 4 large paper size.
Tabloid extra  TRAY 5 LEGAL 14  Legal 14; Legal 13.5  Sets Tray 5 legal paper size. (Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID#  1 to 59; default = 5  Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 4 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14</b> ; Legal 13.5	Sets Tray 4 legal paper size.
(Only displayed if Tray 5 is installed)  PCL TRAY 2 ID# 1 to 59; default = 5 Sets Tray 2 number for PCL	TRAY 5 A3 NOBI		Sets Tray 5 large paper size.
I OL III/(I E IDII	TRAY 5 LEGAL 14	<b>Legal 14</b> ; Legal 13.5	(Only displayed if Tray 5 is
emulation.	PCL TRAY 2 ID#	1 to 59; default = <b>5</b>	Sets Tray 2 number for PCL emulation.
PCL TRAY 3 ID# 1 – 59; default = <b>20</b> Sets Tray 3 number for PCL emulation.	PCL TRAY 3 ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>20</b>	•

# **System adjust menu (continued)**The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PCL TRAY 4 ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>21</b>	Sets Tray 4 number for PCL emulation.
PCL TRAY 5 ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>22</b> )	Sets Tray 5 number for PCL emulation.
PCL MP TRAY ID#	1 – 59; default = <b>4</b>	Sets MP Tray number for PCL emulation.
DRUM CLEANING	OFF; <b>ON</b>	Sets whether to rotate the drum in idle mode before printing to reduce horizontal white lines effect. This will shorten image drum life.
HEX DUMP	Execute	Prints out data received from the host PC in a hexadecimal dump.

#### **Maintenance menu**

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
EEPROM RESET	Execute	Initializes EEPROM for each unit.
SAVE MENU	Execute	Saves the current menu settings.
RESTORE MENU	Execute	Reverts to stored menu settings. (Only displayed if there are saved menu settings).
POWER SAVE	Enable; Disable	Selects power save mode when no input is received for a specified time. See also System adjust menu.
PAPER BLACK SETTING	<b>0</b> ; +1; +2; -2; -1	Not normally used.
PAPER COLOR SETTING	<b>0</b> ; +1; +2; -2; -1	Not normally used.
TRANSPR BLACK SETTING	<b>0</b> ; +1; +2; -2; -1	Not normally used.
TRANSPR COLOR SETTING	<b>0</b> ; +1; +2; -2; -1	Not normally used.

## Usage menu

Item	Value	Description
TOTAL PAGE COUNT	nnnnnn	Shows total number of pages printed.
TRAY 1 PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 1.
TRAY 2 PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 2. Displayed if optional Tray 2 is installed.
TRAY 3 PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 3. Displayed if optional Tray 3 is installed.
TRAY 4 PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 4. Displayed if optional Tray 4 is installed.
TRAY 5 PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Tray 5. Displayed if optional Tray 5 is installed.
MP TRAY PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Shows number of pages printed from Multipurpose Paper Tray.
COLOR PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Number of pages printed in color.
MONOCHROME PAGE COUNT	nnnnn	Number of pages printed in monochrome.
BLACK DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the black image drum as a percentage.
CYAN DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the cyan image drum as a percentage.
MAGENTA DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the magenta image drum as a percentage.
YELLOW DRUM LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the yellow image drum as a percentage.
BELT LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the belt as a percentage.
FUSER LIFE	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining life of the fuser roller as a percentage.
BLACK TONER	15K = xxx%; 7.5K =yyy%	Displays black toner remaining.
CYAN TONER	15K = xxx%; 7.5K = yyy%	Displays cyan toner remaining.

## Usage menu (continued)

Item	Value	Description
MAGENTA TONER	15K = xxx%; 7.5K = yyy%	Displays magenta toner remaining.
YELLOW TONER	15K = xxx%; 7.5K = yyy%	Displays yellow toner remaining.

#### **LIST OF ADMINISTRATOR MENU SETTINGS**

#### NOTE

Only system administrators have access to this menu.

To enter this menu, turn on the printer while holding down the ITEM+ button.

#### **OP** menu

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
ALL CATEGORY	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable all categories of User Menu. Set to Disable, no user menu is shown except the PRINT JOB MENU. Panel Lock is still available.
PRINT JOBS MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable PRINT JOBS MENU. Set to Disable, PRINT JOBS MENU is not displayed. (PRINT JOB MENU is displayed when this MENU setting is set to ENABLE even though ALL CATEGORY is set to DISABLE.)
INFORMATION MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable INFORMATION MENU. Set to Disable, INFORMATION MENU is not displayed.
SHUTDOWN MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable SHUTDOWN MENU. Set to Disable, SHUTDOWN MENU is not displayed.
PRINT MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable PRINT MENU. Set to Disable, PRINT MENU is not displayed.
MEDIA MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable MEDIA MENU. Set to Disable, MEDIA MENU is not displayed.
COLOR MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable COLOR MENU. Set to Disable, COLOR MENU is not displayed.
SYSTEM CONFIG MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable SYSTEM MENU. Set to Disable, SYSTEM MENU is not displayed.

**OP menu (continued)** The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PCL EMULATION MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable PCL EMULATION MENU. Set to Disable, PCL EMULATION MENU is not displayed.
PPR EMULATION MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable PPR EMULATION MENU. Set to Disable, PPR EMULATION MENU is not displayed.
FX EMULATION MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable FX EMULATION MENU. Set to Disable, FX EMULATION MENU is not displayed.
PARALLEL MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable PARALLEL MENU. Set to Disable, PARALLEL MENU is not displayed.
USB MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable USB MENU. Set to Disable, USB MENU is not displayed.
IEEE 1394 MENU	Enable, Disable	Displayed only when the IEEE 1394 board is installed. Enable/Disable IEEE 1394 MENU. Set to Disable, IEEE 1394 MENU is not displayed.
NETWORK MENU	Enable, Disable	Displayed only when the Network Interface Card is installed. Enable/Disable NETWORK MENU. Set to Disable, NETWORK MENU is not displayed.
MEMORY MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable MEMORY MENU. Set to Disable, MEMORY MENU is not displayed.
DISK MAINTENANCE	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable DISK MAINTENANCE MENU. Set to Disable, DISK MAINTENANCE MENU is not displayed.
SYSTEM ADJUST MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable SYSTEM ADJUST MENU. Set to Disable, SYSTEM ADJUST MENU is not displayed.
MAINTENANCE MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable MAINTENANCE MENU. Set to Disable, MAINTENANCE MENU is not displayed.
USAGE MENU	Enable, Disable	Enable/Disable USAGE MENU. Set to Disable, USAGE MENU is not displayed.

#### **Color Menu**

Item	Value	Description
RESET C GAMMA FILTER	EXECUTE	Reset the stored TRC data (retained for tracking).
RESET M GAMMA FILTER	EXECUTE	For example, correct values could not be taken due to "out of order" situation.  This is mainly for maintenance purposes
RESET Y GAMMA FILTER	EXECUTE	and not ordinarily used.
RESET K GAMMA FILTER	EXECUTE	

#### **Block Device Menu**

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
INITIALIZE LOCK	YES, <b>NO</b>	Change to YES to block the operator panel from showing FLASH INITIALISE ITEM and PS FLASH RESIZE ITEM in the Disk maintenance and Memory menus.

#### **Peak Power Control Menu**

The default settings are **bold**.

Item	Value	Description
PEAK POWER CONTROL	NORMAL, LOW	Sets Peak Power Control.

#### SETTING COLOR TUNING FROM THE FRONT PANEL

## **Important!**

- In most cases, using Color Tuning is not necessary as the printer is optimized for color printing at its default settings.
- Once you change these settings, they remain in effect until you go back in and change them.
- To return the settings to the defaults, use the steps below to set each value back to 0 (zero).

You can use the printer's menu to adjust the color intensity for a specific color by adjusting the HIGHLIGHT, MID-TONE and DARK (shadows) Color Tuning Patterns.

- To increase the color intensity, use a higher positive setting (default = 0, maximum = +3).
- To *decrease* the color intensity, use a higher negative setting (default = 0, maximum = -3).

For example, to adjust the intensity of the magenta portion:

#### NOTE

When using the Print Job Accounting utility, you cannot print when "Local Print" is set to "No printing" or "No color printing."

1. Print the Color Tuning Pattern:



- a. Make sure letter size paper is loaded in the tray.
- **b.** Press the MENU button repeatedly until **COLOR MENU** displays.
- **c.** Press the ITEM button repeatedly until **COLOR TUNING** displays.
- d. Press SELECT.

The Color Tuning Pattern prints.

- 2. Adjust the Magenta highlight color.
  - a. Press the ITEM button repeatedly until MAGENTA HIGHLIGHT nn displays.
  - b. Press the VALUE button repeatedly until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., +3).
  - c. Press the SELECT button.

An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.

- 3. Adjust the Magenta mid-tone color:
  - **a.** Press the ITEM button repeatedly until **MAGENTA MID-TONE nn** appears.
  - **b.** Press the VALUE button repeatedly until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., +3).
  - c. Press the SELECT button.

An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.

- 4. Adjust the Magenta dark color:
  - a. Press the ITEM button repeatedly until MAGENTA DARK nn displays.
  - **b.** Press the VALUE button repeatedly until the new value you wish to use displays (e.g., +3).
  - c. Press the SELECT button.

An asterisk (\*) appears at the right of the number.

- **5.** Press the ON LINE button to save the new setting and return the printer to online status
- 6. Print from your application.

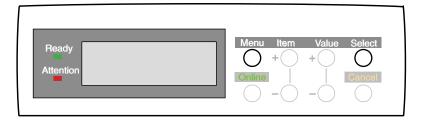
Repeat the above steps until you get the desired magenta color intensity.

#### **NOTE**

To adjust these settings for the Cyan, Yellow or Black color intensity, substitute the appropriate color name in the steps above.

#### SWITCHING OFF

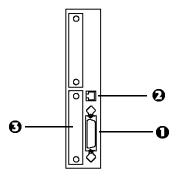
In normal circumstances the power save facility should be used to avoid having to switch the printer off. However if you do wish to switch the printer off manually, please carry out the following procedure:



#### **CAUTION!**

- NEVER turn the printer off while it is printing.
- If the optional hard disk has been installed, The following procedure MUST BE FOLLOWED before turning off to protect any data that is stored on the hard disk.
- It is recommended that you follow this shutdown procedure each time the printer is switched off for any reason.
- After switching the printer OFF, wait at least 10 seconds before switching it ON again. This allows the internal power levels to drop. Switching on too soon could cause the printer to malfunction.
- 1. Press the MENU button until the **SHUTDOWN MENU** is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- 2. Press the **Select** button again to **EXECUTE** the shutdown sequence.
- When PLEASE POWER OFF SHUTDOWN COMPLETED is displayed, turn the printer off using the power switch.

#### **INTERFACES**



Your printer is equipped with a selection of data interfaces:

- 1. Parallel For direct connection to a PC. This port requires a bi-directional (IEEE 1284 compliant) parallel cable.
- 2. USB For connection to a PC running Windows 98 or above (not Windows 95 upgraded to Windows 98) or Macintosh. This port requires a cable conforming to USB version 1.1 or above.
  - The operation of a printer is not assured if a USB compatible device is connected concurrently with other USB-compatible machines.
  - When connecting multiple printers of the same type, they
    appear as \*\*\*\*\*, \*\*\*\*\*\* (2), \*\*\*\*\*\* (3), etc. These numbers
    depend on the order of connecting or turning on each printer..

#### **NOTE**

Administrator's authority is required when installing a network connection.

- **3. Ethernet** For network cable connection. See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on:
  - Making the interface connections
  - Installing the printer drivers
  - Installing network software.

# Windows XP Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

#### WHICH PRINTER DRIVER TO USE?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe<sup>®</sup> PostScript<sup>®</sup> (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including ".eps" files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This will be more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or you will be printing PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation performance will be faster and graphics will be printed at their best quality

#### **NOTE**

The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. So if you plan to print parts of this manual choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise the line art graphics will only print at low resolution.

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers: select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can print using the alternative driver whenever you need to.

#### **ENABLING INSTALLED OPTIONS IN THE DRIVERS**

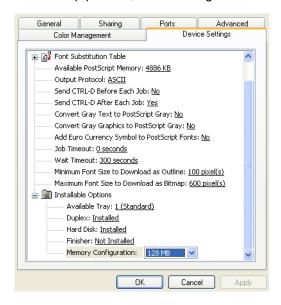
Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

#### For additional memory: PostScript driver only

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

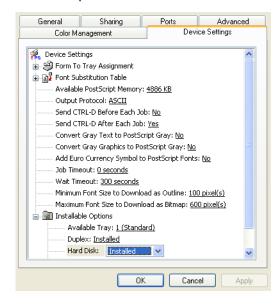
- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab.
- 4. Under Installable Options, click Memory Configuration, then set the memory in the drop-down list to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the MenuMap (to generate a MenuMap printout, see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44).



#### For the internal hard disk drive

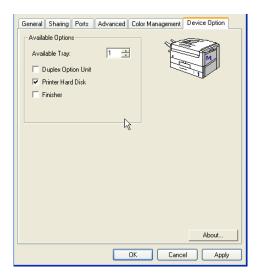
#### PostScript driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab.
- Under Installable Options, make sure the setting in the Hard Disk drop-down list is Installed.



#### **PCL** driver

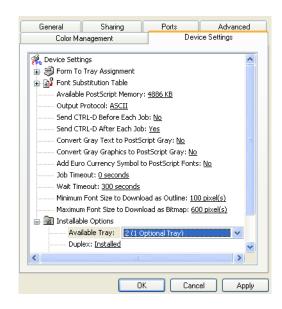
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Printer Hard Disk.



#### For additional paper trays

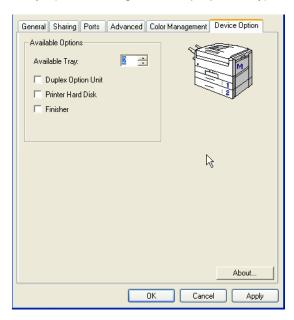
#### PostScript driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Trays, then select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) in the drop-down list.



#### **PCL** driver

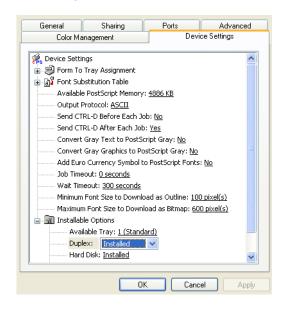
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- **3.** On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray).



#### For the duplex unit

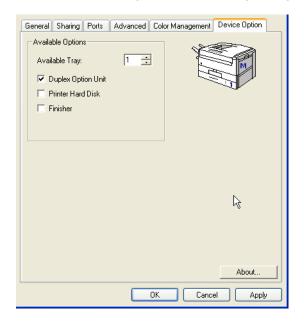
#### PostScript driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Duplex and select Installed in the drop-down list.



#### **PCL** driver

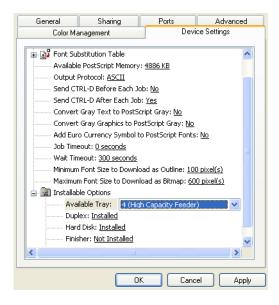
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Option tab, click Duplex Option Unit.



#### For the high capacity feeder

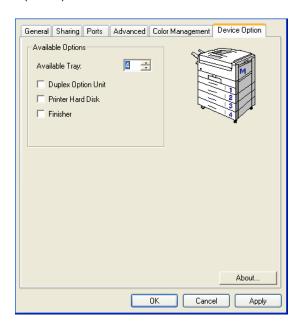
#### **PostScript driver**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Tray, then select the appropriate setting (4 or 5) in the drop-down list.



#### **PCL** driver

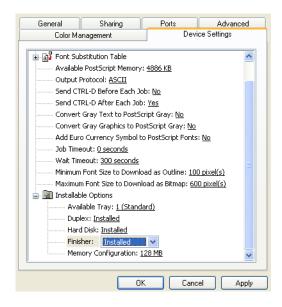
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- **3.** On the **Device Option** tab, select the number of trays installed (4 or 5).



#### For the finisher

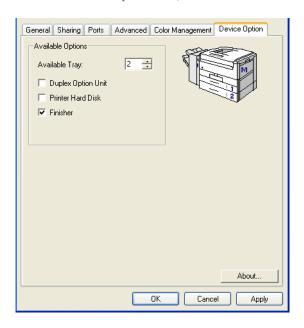
#### PostScript driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Finisher, then select Installed in the drop-down list.



#### **PCL** driver

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Finisher.



# CHANGING DEFAULTS FOR PAPER FEED, SIZE AND MEDIA IN THE DRIVER

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

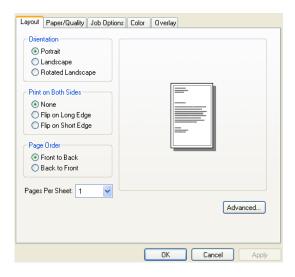
#### NOTE

If the defaults set manually in the printer menu differ from those you set in the printer driver, the printer will not print and the LCD will display an error message.

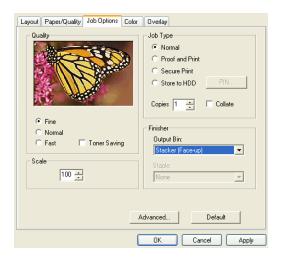
The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

#### **PostScript drivers**

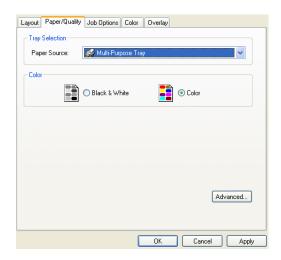
- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.



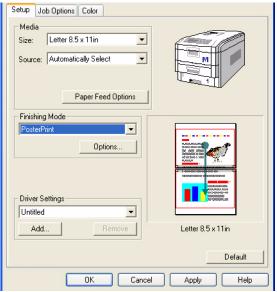
 If you will be using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, click the Job Options tab and set the Output Bin under Finisher to Stacker(Face-up).



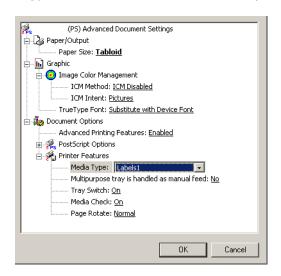
4. Click the Paper/Quality tab. Under Tray Selection, select the paper feed in the Paper Source drop-down list.



- 5. Click the Advanced button.
- **6.** Under Paper/Output, select the media size in the Paper Size drop-down list.

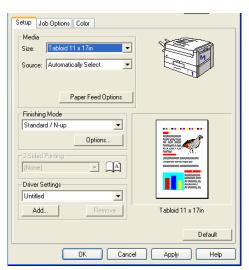


Under Document Options → Printer Features, click Media
 Type and select the media from the drop-down list.



#### **PCL** drivers

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. On the Setup tab, under Media, select the required paper size in the Size drop-down list.

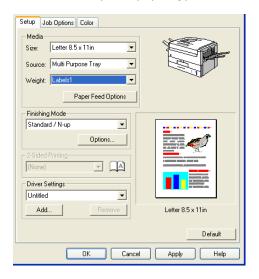


4. Select the required paper feed under Source.

#### NOTE

If a paper tray is selected the Weight field becomes visible.

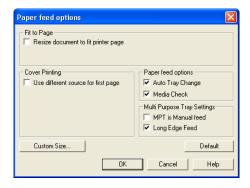
5. Select the required paper type under Weight.



#### NOTE

If Printer Setting is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

Click the Paper Feed Options button and make any other selections then click OK.



#### **Network Printer Status utility**

Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. If the utility is installed, you will see the following changes to the printer driver **Properties** dialog box:

- a new Status tab is added.
- an Option button is added to the Device Option tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- · percentage of toner remaining.

#### **Important!**

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver will automatically ping the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box. This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens. To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows XP Operation

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features including:

- N-up printing (see page 130)
- Custom page sizes (see page 132)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 137)
- Duplex printing (see page 138)
- Watermarks (see page 144)
- Collating (see page 146)
- Proof and Print (see page 147)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 150)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 153)
- Using overlays (see page 156)
- Printing posters (see page 169)

#### NOTE

Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.

#### FACTORS THAT AFFECT COLOR PRINTING

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic,* and there are many factors to take into consideration. Some of the most important factors are listed below.

## Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues and these cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

## **Viewing conditions**

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

## **Printer driver color settings**

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

## **Monitor settings**

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

#### **NOTE**

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many modern monitors allow the color temperature to be adjusted using the monitor's control panel.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

#### 5000k\*

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

#### 6500k

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

#### 9300k

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

## How your software application displays color

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

## Paper type

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

#### CHOOSING A COLOR MATCHING METHOD

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer. There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

#### **NOTE**

These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications will override any color matching settings in the printer driver without warning.

#### RGB or CMYK?

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method makes distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print will be in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

## **Matching Photographic Images**

#### RGB only

Oki Color Matching (see page 121) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### **RGB or CMYK**

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows ICM color matching" on page 129), and then print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

## Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)

## **RGB** only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 121), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 123).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 119).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows ICM color matching" on page 129), and then print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric setting (see page 123).

## **Printing Vivid Colors**

## **RGB** only

• Use Oki Color Matching (see page 121), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

• Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 123) with the Saturation option.

## **COLOR MATCHING: PCL DRIVER**

## **Color Matching Options**

The Color Matching options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

#### **NOTE**

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

## To manually set the color matching options in the PCL driver:

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- Right click the appropriate printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



 Click Manual Color under Color Mode, then click Natural under Color Setting.



4. Select the method you wish to use:

### Monitor (6500k) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

## Monitor (6500k) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

## Monitor (9300k)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

## **Digital Camera**

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### sRGB

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed

- without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.
- **5.** Set any other required parameters using the on-line Help for guidance.
- **6.** When you are done, click **OK** and close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

## The Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

## An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Printing Preferences**.
- 3. Click the Color tab.
- Click the Color Swatch button to print the color swatch samples.
- **5.** Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
- **6.** Using your program's color picker, enter these same RGB values (from step 5), and change the logo to that color.

#### **NOTE**

The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.

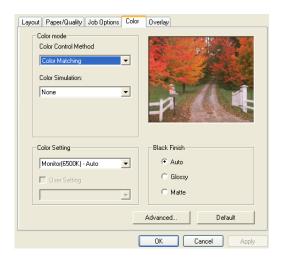
### **COLOR MATCHING: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER**

## **Color Matching Options**

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

## To manually set the color matching options in the PostScript driver:

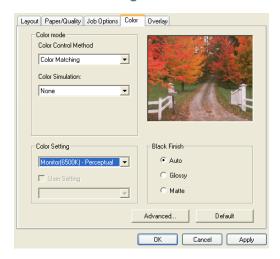
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



- 4. Select the method to use from the Color Control Method drop-down list under Color Mode:
  - a. Color Control = OKI Color Matching

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB data only*.

Select the type to be used from the drop-down list under **Color Setting**:



#### Monitor (6500k) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

#### Monitor (6500k) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text.

#### • Monitor (9300k)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

#### Digital Camera

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

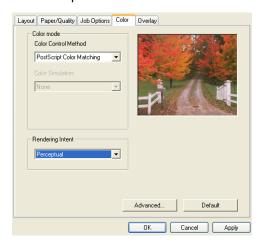
#### sRGB

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

#### b. Color Control = PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. Select the rendering type from the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list.



#### · Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The rendering intents that the printer driver provides are listed below:

#### Auto

Best choice for printing general documents.

#### - Perceptual

Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image.

#### Saturation

Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.

#### Relative Colorimetric

Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white; i.e. unlike Absolute Colorimetric, this attempts to take the paper white into account.

#### Absolute Colorimetric

Best for printing solid colors and tints, such as Company logos etc. Matches colors common to both devices exactly, and clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

## c. Color Control = Using ICC Profile

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature: PostScript driver only" on page 126.

## d. Color Control = No Color Matching

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching.

## e. Color Control = Print in Grayscale

This option prints all documents as monochrome.

## OKI "USING ICC PROFILES" FEATURE: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER ONLY

#### Affects RGB data only.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the ES 3037e printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

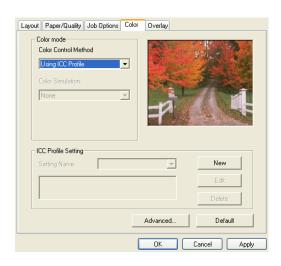
The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

#### **NOTE**

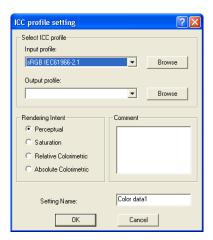
This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space

## To set up ICC profiles:

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Color tab.
- 4. Under Color mode, select Using ICC Profile in the Color Control Method drop-down list.



#### 5. Click the New button.



- **6.** Select the **Input profile** and **Output profile** in the drop-down lists under **Select ICC profile**.
- Select the desired Rendering Intent and type in a name for the profile and click OK. The new name will appear in the Setting Name drop-down list under ICC Profile Setting.
- 8. Repeat steps 5-7 for each ICC profile you wish to define.
- **9.** Click **OK** and close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.

#### WINDOWS ICM COLOR MATCHING

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects RGB data only.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer; these profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File, then Properties.
- Click the Color Management tab.
- 4. Under "Color Profiles currently associated with this printer" you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click "Add..." and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver

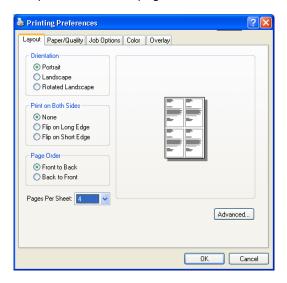
#### NOTE

Oki also provides an alternative to Windows ICM with the Color Match "Using ICC Profiles" feature. This is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.

## PRINTING MULTIPLE PAGES ON ONE SHEET (N-UP PRINTING)

## N-Up printing using the PostScript driver

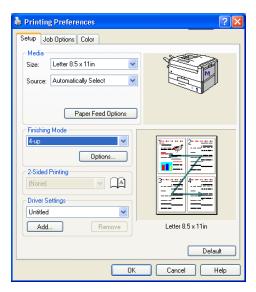
- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- **3.** On the **Layout** tab, under **Pages Per Sheet**, select the required number of pages.



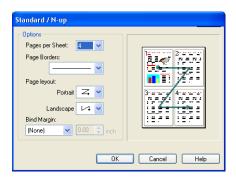
4. Click OK, then click Print.

## N-Up printing using the PCL driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- 3. On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select the required number of pages per sheet.



 Click the Options button and select the Page Borders, Page Layout and Bind Margin, then click OK.



5. Click OK, then click Print.

#### PRINTING CUSTOM PAGE SIZES

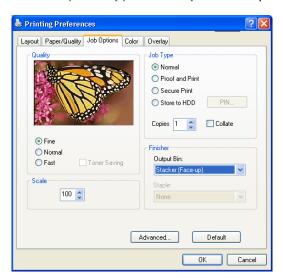
Custom page sizes can only be printed from the multi purpose tray. The printer media size for the multi purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use (range 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm] wide x 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm] long).

## Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver

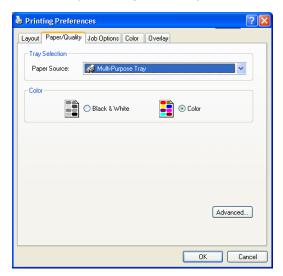
#### **NOTE**

One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- Click the Job Options tab. Under Finisher, select Stacker(Face-up) in the Output Bin drop-down list.



 Click the Paper/Quality tab. Under Tray Selection, select Multi-Purpose Tray in the Paper Source drop-down list.



- Click the Advanced button. Under Paper/Output, select Postscript Custom page Size in the Paper Size drop-down list.
- **6.** Enter the Width and Height for the custom paper and select the Paper Feed Direction.

#### **NOTE**

- Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first
- Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first
- Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
- Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
  - 7. Click OK three times.
  - 8. Click Print.

## Printing custom pages using the PCL driver

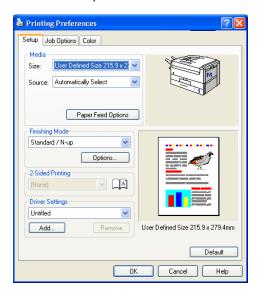
#### **NOTE**

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Preferences** button.
- 3. On the Job Options tab, under Finisher, set the Output Bin to Printer Face Up.



 On the Setup tab, under Media, select User Defined Size in the Size drop-down list.



#### **NOTE**

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK and the driver will automatically make the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

**5.** Select the unit, then enter the width and length measurements and click **OK**.



**6.** Check that **User Defined** now appears in the **Size** list on the **Setup** tab.

#### **NOTE**

## To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options, then click Custom Size.
- Select the unit, then enter the relevant information for Width and Height and give your custom size a name under Name.
- · Click Add.
- Click OK.
   The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.
  - 7. Click OK twice.
  - 8. Click Print.

#### CHANGING THE RESOLUTION FOR A PRINT JOB

#### NOTE

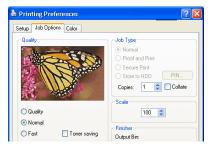
These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- Right click the appropriate printer name, then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below. Note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
  - 3. Click the Job Options tab.
  - Select the required printing resolution under Quality...

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



- **5.** Select **Toner Saving** if appropriate.
- 6. Click OK, then click Print.

## DUPLEX PRINTING (PRINTING ON BOTH SIDES OF THE PAPER)

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m²).
- Paper must be loaded print side up.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing. The MP tray cannot be used for duplex printing.

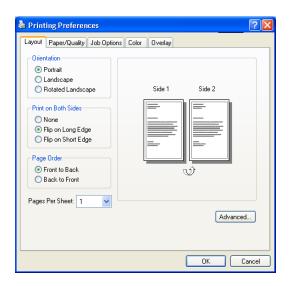
#### NOTE

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers and Faxes.
- Right click the appropriate printer name, then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below. Note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.

## **Duplex printing using the PostScript driver**

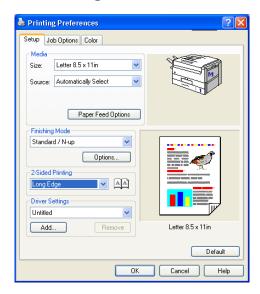
- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Preferences** button.
- 3. On the Layout tab, under Print on Both Sides, select Flip on Long Edge or Flip on Short Edge.



4. Click OK, then click Print.

## **Duplex printing using the PCL driver**

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- **2.** In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Preferences** button.
- On the Setup tab, under 2-Sided Printing, select Long Edge or Short Edge.



4. Click OK, then click Print.

#### PRINTING BOOKLETS

#### **NOTES**

- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

## **Printing booklets using the PostScript driver**

#### NOTE

Booklet printing using the PostScript driver is restricted to 2 pages per sheet (e.g., print a  $5\frac{1}{2}$  x  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inch booklet on  $8\frac{1}{2}$  x 11 inch paper or print an  $8\frac{1}{2}$  x 11 inch booklet on 11 x 17 inch paper).

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select  $File \rightarrow Print$ .
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Preferences** button

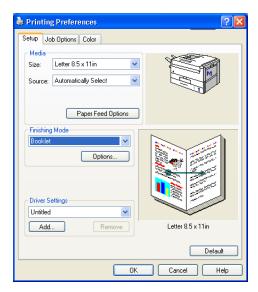
3. On the Layout tab, under Pages Per Sheet, select Booklet in the drop-down list.



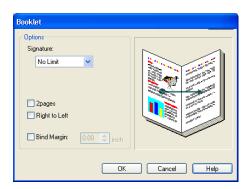
4. Click OK, then click Print.

## Printing booklets using the PCL driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Booklet in the drop-down list.



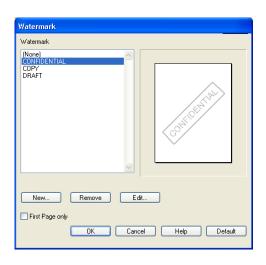
**4.** Click the **Options** button, then set the **Signature**, **2pages**, etc. (see the on-line Help for information), and click **OK**.



5. Click OK, the click Print.

#### PRINTING WATERMARKS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

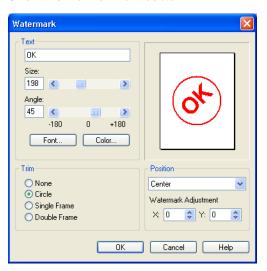
- **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- **2.** In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Preferences** button.
- 3. On the Job Options tab, click Watermark.
- 4. Select a name from the Watermark list.



## **NOTE**

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark and select the font, size, angle, etc., to be used.
- · Click OK.

The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.

- **5.** If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
- 6. Click OK twice.
- 7. Click Print.

#### COLLATING

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. However, printers with a hard disk drive will provide greater performance.

# **Important**

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

The following instructions explain how to select collating using the printer driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- On the Job Options tab, under Job Type, enter the number of copies required and—only if the application has no collate option—select Collate.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



4. Click OK, then click Print.

## PROOF AND PRINT

Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

#### **NOTES**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.

**3.** Enter the number of copies and, if required, select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver





- a. Under Job Type, select Proof and Print.
- b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- **c.** Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click **OK**.
- **4.** Click **OK**, then click **Print**. The document is stored on the hard disk drive, and one copy is printed for checking.
- After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document using the procedures given below.

# **Printing copies**

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**, then press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

# **Deleting copies**

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

- **1.** Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line help for Oki Storage Device Manager.

# SECURE PRINTING (PRINTING CONFIDENTIAL DOCUMENTS)

Secure printing or printing with passwords allows the printing of confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
  - 3. Under Job Type, select Secure Print.

#### NOTE

If you've already placed a document on the hard disk drive using Secure Print, but have not yet printed it out, click the PIN button and enter a new job name. a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.
- 4. Enter the number of copies and, if required, select Collate.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver





- **5.** Click **OK**, then click **Print**. The document will be stored on the printer's hard disk.
- **6.** Go to the printer and print out the document using the front panel (see below).

# Printing a confidential document from the front panel

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the SELECT button.

The document will print and be deleted from the hard disk drive.

# Deleting the confidential document before printing it

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- 4. Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

#### **NOTE**

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the on-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

# STORE TO HARD DISK

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead stationery, etc.

#### **NOTE**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
  - 3. On the Job Options tab, select Store to HDD.

#### **NOTE**

If you've already stored a document on the printer's hard disk drive, and want to store another one, click the PIN button and enter a new Job Name.

a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



b. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver





4. Click OK, then click Print. The document will be stored on the hard disk and can then be printed on demand, or deleted, using the procedure below.

# To print a stored document

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the document.

# To delete a stored document from the hard disk drive

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

# PRINTING OVERLAYS

# What are Overlays?

An Overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (supplied on some models, optional on others), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

# An example of using Overlays:

Suppose that you have created and stored three files in the printer using the Storage Device Manager:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

# To create overlays:

- Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead) and generate a PRN file (print file) using the printer driver.
- 2. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format, and download it to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.
- An overlay may consist of more than one component file.

# Creating documents to use as overlays

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

#### **PCL Driver**

To create a print (PRN) file:

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- 2. Ensure that the "Print To File" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- **3.** Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click the **Preferences** button. This should open the printer driver settings.

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PCL driver to do this.

- **4.** Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
- 5. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.
- 7. Click Print.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

# **PostScript**

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the Print To File option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click Properties... This should open the printer driver settings.
- 4. Select the Job Options tab, and click the Overlays... button.
- 5. Choose Create Form from the menu.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click OK to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

# Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how download this file to the printer using the Storage Device Manager.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

- 1. Launch Storage Device Manager and allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
- 2. Click Project then New Project.
- **3.** Select **Add File to Project** from the **Project** menu, and select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.

PCL: This automatically generates a BIN file.

# **Important!**

At this step, you will see in the project window that the BIN file is assigned an ID number. You can change this ID number by double-clicking it, and entering a new one in the ID field.

**PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive*.

#### **NOTE**

For PCL and PS: this is important because you need to use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. Therefore, it is recommended you change the ID number or name from the default value and *note it for later use*.

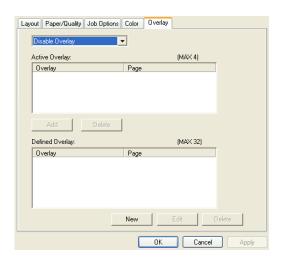
- **4.** Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.
- Select the Project menu and then choose Send Project Files to Printer.

This downloads the file to the printer. The Storage Device Manager displays "Command Issued" to indicate that the file was downloaded successfully.

6. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# **Defining Overlays: PostScript**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Click the Overlay button.



5. Click the New button.

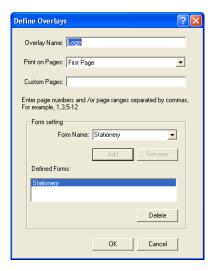


**6.** Enter the file name of the overlay in the **Overlay Name** list, and select the pages on which it is to be printed.

## **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

7. Enter or select a form name in the drop-down list under Form setting, then click Add.

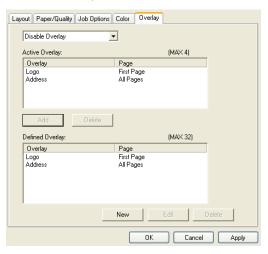


#### **NOTE**

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- 8. Click OK.
- **9.** If required, continue to add files to the overlay by repeating steps 5 through 8.

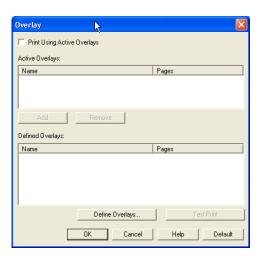
10. Highlight the overlay name(s) under Defined Overlay and click Add to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay (to select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name).



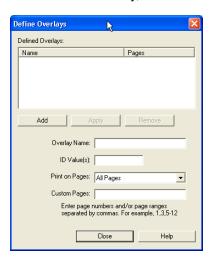
- **11.** Select **Use Overlay** from the drop-down list at the top of the dialog box, then click **OK**.
- 12. Close the Printers and Faxes dialog box.

# **Defining Overlays: PCL**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers and Faxes.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab.
- 4. Click the Overlay... button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



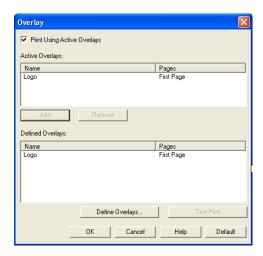
Enter the file name of the overlay in the Overlay Name list.

#### NOTE

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

- Enter the ID of the file in ID Values. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
- Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from Print on Pages or use Custom Pages to select specific page numbers in the document, then click Add
- 9. Click Close.
- Highlight the overlay name under Defined Overlay and click the Add button to add the overlay to the list in Active Overlays.

11. Select Print Using Active Overlays.

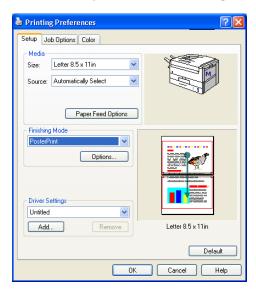


- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click OK to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

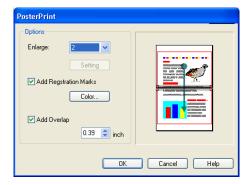
## PRINTING POSTERS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces which print enlarged on separate sheets. Then the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the General tab, then click the Preferences button.
- 3. On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Poster Print.



4. Click Options... and enter the configuration details



- 5. Click OK twice.
- 6. Click Print.

# Windows 2000 Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

# WHICH PRINTER DRIVER TO USE?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe<sup>®</sup> PostScript<sup>®</sup> (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including ".eps" files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This will be more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or you will be printing PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation performance will be faster and graphics will be printed at their best quality.

# **NOTE**

The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. So if you plan to print parts of this manual choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise the line art graphics will only print at low resolution.

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers: select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can print using the alternative driver whenever you need to.

## **ENABLING INSTALLED OPTIONS IN THE DRIVERS**

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

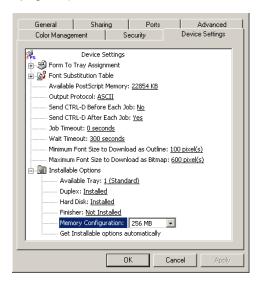
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

# For additional memory

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the **Device Settings** tab.

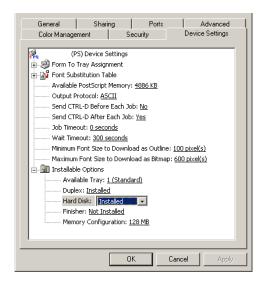
 Under Installable Options, click Memory Configuration, then set the memory in the drop-down box to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the MenuMap (to generate a MenuMap printout, see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44)



#### For the internal hard disk drive

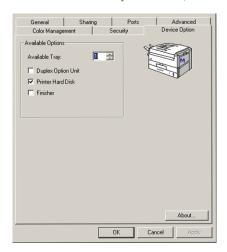
# **PostScript driver**

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click **File** then **Properties**.
- Click the Device Settings tab.
- Under Installable Options, change the setting for the Hard Disk drop-down box to Installed.



#### **PCL** driver

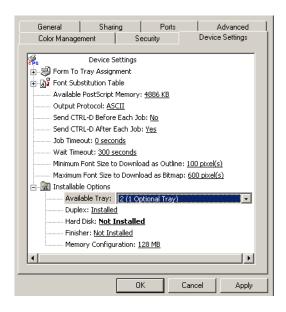
- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Options tab, click Printer Hard Disk.



# For additional paper trays

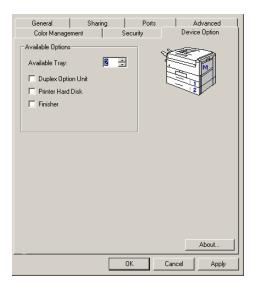
# **PostScript driver**

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Trays, then select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi Purpose tray) in the drop-down box.



#### **PCL** driver

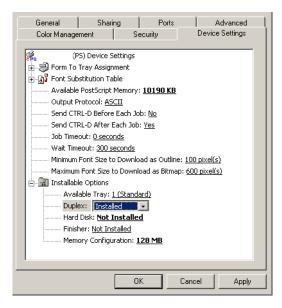
- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi Purpose tray).



# For the duplex unit

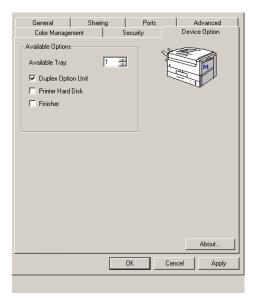
# **PostScript driver**

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Duplex and select Installed in the drop-down box.



#### **PCL** driver

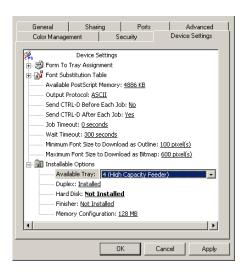
- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Option tab, click Duplex Option Unit.



# For the high capacity feeder

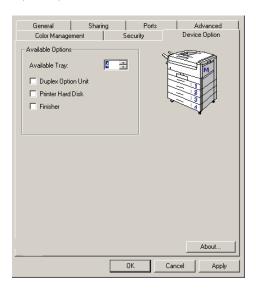
# **PostScript driver**

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Tray, then select the appropriate setting (4 or 5) in the drop-down box.



#### **PCL** driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- On the Device Option tab, select the number of trays installed (4 or 5).

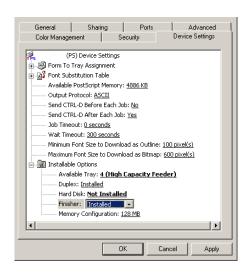


4. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# For the finisher

# **PostScript driver**

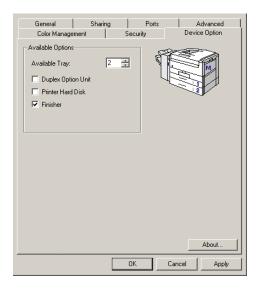
- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Finisher, then select Installed in the drop-down box.



4. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

#### **PCL** driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Finisher.



4. Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

# CHANGING DEFAULTS FOR PAPER FEED, SIZE AND MEDIA IN THE DRIVER

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

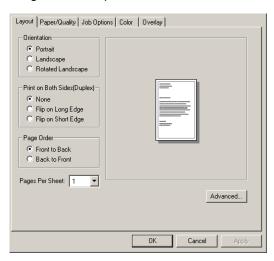
#### NOTE

If the defaults set manually in the printer menu differ from those you set in the printer driver, the printer will not print and the LCD will display an error message.

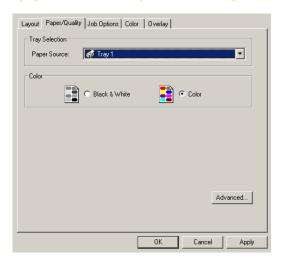
The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

# PostScript driver

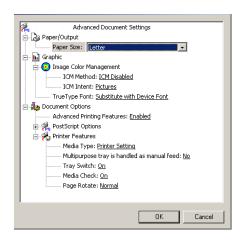
- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.



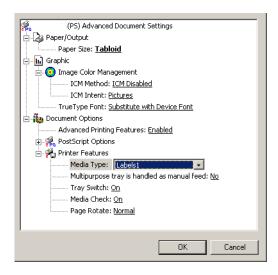
- If you will be using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, click the Job Options tab and set the Output Bin under Finisher to Stacker(Face-up).
- Click the Paper/Quality tab. Under Tray Selection, select the paper feed in the Paper Source drop-down box.



- Click the Advanced button.
- Under Paper/Output, select the media size in the Paper Size drop-down box.



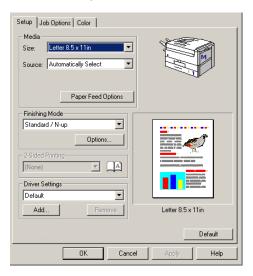
Under Document Options → Printer Features, click Media
 Type and select the media from the drop-down box.



8. Click **OK** twice and close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

#### **PCL** driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Printing Preferences**.
- In the Setup tab, under Media, select the required paper size in the Size drop-down box.



4. Select the required paper feed under Source.

#### NOTE

If a paper tray is selected the Weight field becomes visible.

5. Select the required paper type under Weight.

# **NOTE**

If Printer Setting is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

6. Click **Paper Feed Options** and make any other selections, then click **OK**.



7. Click **OK** twice and close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

# **Network Printer Status utility**

Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. If the utility is installed, you will see the following changes to the printer driver **Properties** dialog box:

- · a new Status tab is added.
- an Option button is added to the Device Option tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- · total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

# **Important!**

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver will automatically ping the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box. This causes a significant delay until the Properties box opens. To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows 2000 Operation

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features including:

- N-up printing (see page 211)
- Custom page sizes (see page 213)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 218)
- Duplex printing (see page 219)
- Watermarks (see page 226)
- Collating (see page 228)
- Proof and Print (see page 229)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 232)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 235)
- Using overlays (see page 238)
- Printing posters (see page 251)

#### NOTE

Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.

### FACTORS THAT AFFECT COLOR PRINTING

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration*. Some of the most important factors are listed below.

# Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues and these cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

# **Viewing conditions**

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

# **Printer driver color settings**

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# **Monitor settings**

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

#### **NOTE**

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many modern monitors allow the color temperature to be adjusted using the monitor's control panel.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

#### 5000k\*

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

#### • 6500k

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

#### 9300k

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# How your software application displays color

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

# Paper type

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

#### CHOOSING A COLOR MATCHING METHOD

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer. There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

#### **NOTE**

These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications will override any color matching settings in the printer driver without warning.

#### RGB or CMYK?

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method makes distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print will be in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Matching Photographic Images**

## RGB only

Oki Color Matching (see page 202) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### RGB or CMYK

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows ICM color matching" on page 210), and then print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

# Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)

### **RGB** only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 202), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 204).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 200).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as
  Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to
  simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you
  can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows
  ICM color matching" on page 210), and then print using the
  ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric setting (see page 204).

# **Printing Vivid Colors**

# **RGB** only

 Use Oki Color Matching (see page 202), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

• Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 204) with the Saturation option.

# **COLOR MATCHING: PCL DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The Color Matching options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

#### **NOTE**

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

# To manually set the color matching options in the PCL driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



a. Click Manual Color under Color Mode, then click Natural under Color Setting.



4. Select the method you wish to use:

## Monitor (6500k) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

#### Monitor (6500k) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

# Monitor (9300k)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

# **Digital Camera**

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### sRGB

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

- **5.** Set any other required parameters using the on-line Help for guidance.
- **6.** When you are done, click **OK** and close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

# The Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

# An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Printing Preferences**.
- 3. Click the Color tab.
- **4.** Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
- **5.** Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
- **6.** Using your program's color picker, enter these same RGB values (from step 5), and change the logo to that color.

#### **NOTE**

The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.

# **COLOR MATCHING: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

# To manually set the color matching options in the PostScript driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- Click the Color tab.



- **4.** Select the method to use from the **Color Control Method** drop-down list box under **Color Mode**.
  - Color Control = OKI Color Matching
  - Color Control = PostScript Color Matching
  - Color Control = Using ICC Profile
  - Color Control = No Color Matching
  - Color Control = Print in Grayscale

# **Color Control = OKI Color Matching**

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB* data only.

Select the type to be used from the drop-down list box under **Color Setting**:



# • Monitor (6500k) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

# • Monitor (6500k) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text.

# • Monitor (9300k)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

### Digital Camera

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### sRGB

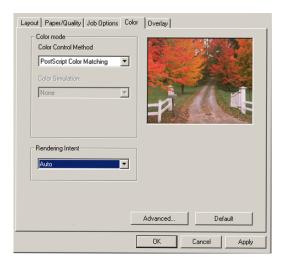
Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

# **Color Control = PostScript Color Matching**

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data.

Select the rendering type from the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list box.



#### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The rendering intents that the printer driver provides are listed below:

#### Auto

Best choice for printing general documents.

#### Perceptual

Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image.

#### Saturation

Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.

#### Relative Colorimetric

Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white; i.e. unlike Absolute Colorimetric, this attempts to take the paper white into account.

#### Absolute Colorimetric

Best for printing solid colors and tints, such as Company logos etc. Matches colors common to both devices exactly, and clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter **areas of an image.** 

# **Color Control = Using ICC Profile**

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature: PostScript driver only" on page 207.

# a. Color Control = No Color Matching

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching.

# b. Color Control = Print in Grayscale

This option prints all documents as monochrome.

# OKI "USING ICC PROFILES" FEATURE: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER ONLY

# Affects RGB data only.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the ES 3037 printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

#### NOTE

This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space

# To set up ICC profiles:

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Color tab.
- Under Color mode, select Using ICC Profile in the Color Control Method drop-down box.



#### 5. Click the New button.



- Select the Input profile and Output profile in the drop-down boxes under Select ICC profile.
- Select the desired Rendering Intent and type in a name for the profile, then click OK. The new name will appear in the Setting Name drop-down box under ICC Profile Setting.
- 8. Repeat steps 5-7 for each ICC profile you wish to define.
- **9.** Click **OK** and close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

#### WINDOWS ICM COLOR MATCHING

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects RGB data only.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver.

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer; these profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File, then Properties.
- 3. Click the Color Management tab.
- 4. Under "Color Profiles currently associated with this printer," you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click "Add..." and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver

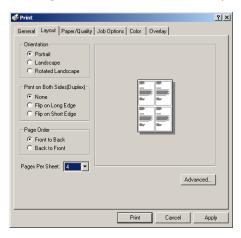
#### NOTE

Oki also provides an alternative to Windows ICM with the Color Match "Using ICC Profiles" feature. This is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.

# PRINTING MULTIPLE PAGES ON ONE SHEET (N-UP PRINTING)

# N-Up printing using the PostScript driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the General tab, then click the Layout tab.
- 3. Under Pages Per Sheet, select the required number of pages.

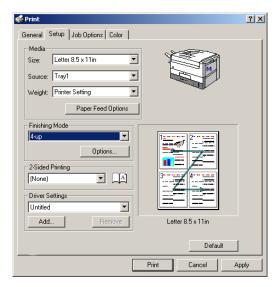


4. Click Print.

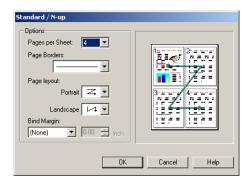
# N-Up printing using the PCL driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Setup** tab.

**3.** Under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



Click Options and select the Page Borders, Page Layout and Bind Margin, then click OK.



5. Click Print.

### PRINTING CUSTOM PAGE SIZES

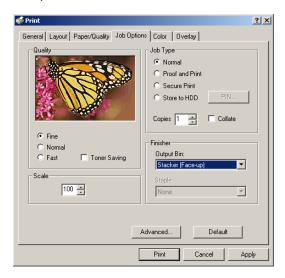
Custom page sizes can only be printed from the Multi-purpose tray. The printer media size for the Multi-purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use (range 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm] wide x 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm] long).

# Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver

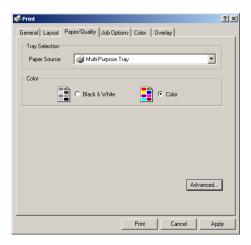
#### NOTE

One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

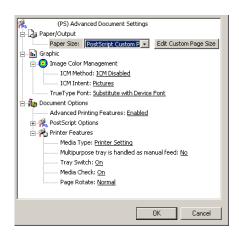
- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Job Options** tab.
- Under Finisher, select Stacker(Face-up) in the Output Bin drop-down box.



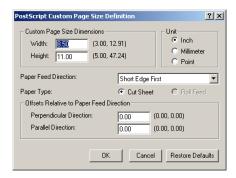
 Click the Paper/Quality tab. Under Tray Selection, select Multi-Purpose Tray in the Paper Source drop-down box.



 Click the Advanced button. Under Paper/Output, select Postscript Custom Page Size in the Paper Size drop-down box.



6. Click the Edit Custom Page Size button.



7. Enter the width and height for the custom paper and select the Paper Feed Direction.

### **NOTE**

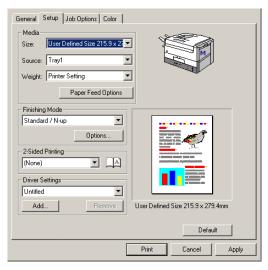
- Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first
- Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first
- Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
- Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
  - 8. Click OK twice.
  - 9. Click Print.

# Printing custom pages using the PCL driver

#### NOTE

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Setup** tab.
- 3. Under Media, select User Defined in the Size drop-down box.



#### NOTE

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK and the driver will automatically make the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

**4.** Select the unit, then enter the width and length measurements and click **OK**.



Check that User Defined now appears in the Size box on the Setup tab.

#### **NOTE**

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options, then click Custom Size.
- Select the unit, then enter the relevant information for Width and Height and give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.
- Click OK.

The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Click Print.

#### CHANGING THE RESOLUTION FOR A PRINT JOB

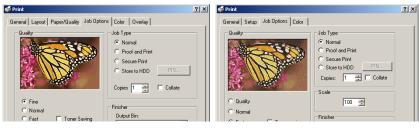
#### NOTE

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name, then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below. Note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab.
  - Click the Job Options tab.
  - 4. Select the required printing resolution under Quality.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver



- **5.** Select **Toner Saving** if appropriate.
- 6. Click Print.

# DUPLEX PRINTING (PRINTING ON BOTH SIDES OF THE PAPER)

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- · Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m²).
- Paper must be loaded print side up.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing. The Multi-purpose tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

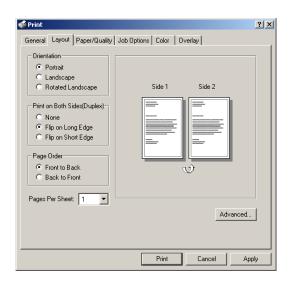
#### **NOTE**

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name, then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below. Note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.

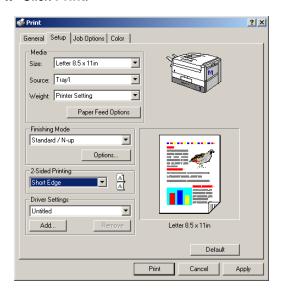
# **Duplex printing using the PostScript driver**

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select  $File \rightarrow Print$ .
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Layout** tab.
- 3. Under Print on Both Sides(Duplex) tab, select Flip on Long Edge or Flip on Short Edge.
- 4. Click Print.



# **Duplex printing using the PCL driver**

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Setup** tab.
- 3. Under 2-Sided Printing, select Long Edge or Short Edge.
- 4. Click Print.



#### **PRINTING BOOKLETS**

#### **NOTES**

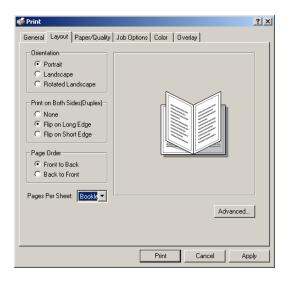
- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

# **Printing booklets using the PostScript driver**

# **Important!**

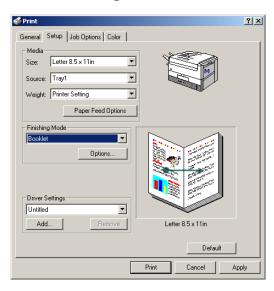
Booklet printing using the PostScript driver is restricted to 2 pages per sheet (e.g., print a  $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$  inch booklet on  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$  inch paper, or print an  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$  inch document on  $11 \times 17$  inch paper).

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Layout** tab.
- 3. Under Pages Per Sheet, select Booklet in the drop-down list.
- 4. Click Print.

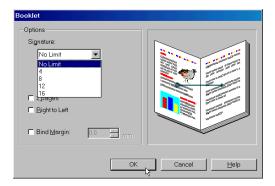


# Printing booklets using the PCL driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select  $File \rightarrow Print$ .
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PS driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Setup** tab.
- 3. Under Finishing Mode, select Booklet in the drop-down box.



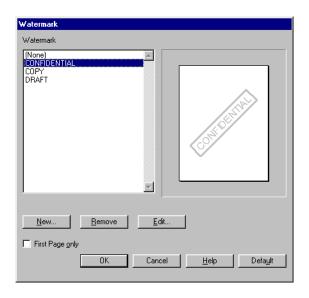
4. Click the Options button and set Signature, 2Pages, Right to Left and Bind Margin as required, then click OK.



5. Click Print.

#### PRINTING WATERMARKS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Job Options** tab.
- 3. Click the Watermark button.
- 4. Select a name from the Watermark list.



#### **NOTE**

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

· Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark and select the font, size, angle, etc., to be used.
- Click OK.

  The new watermark appears in the Watermark list box.
  - **5.** If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
  - 6. Click OK.
  - 7. Click Print.

#### COLLATING

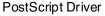
Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. However, printers with a hard disk drive will provide greater performance.

# **Important**

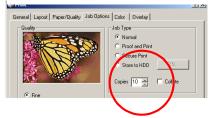
If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

The following instructions explain how to select collating using the printer driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Job Options tab.
- Under Job Type, enter the number of copies required and only if the application has no collate option—select Collate.



PCL Driver





4. Click Print.

#### PROOF AND PRINT

Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

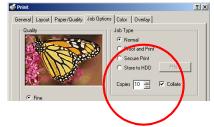
#### **NOTES**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Job Options tab.

3. Enter the number of copies and, if required, select Collate.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver





- Under Job Type, select Proof and Print. a.
- Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.
- 4. Click Print. The document is stored on the hard disk drive, and one copy is printed for checking.
- 5. After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document using the procedures given below.

# **Printing copies**

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**, then press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

# **Deleting copies**

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line help for Oki Storage Device Manager.

# SECURE PRINTING (PRINTING CONFIDENTIAL DOCUMENTS)

Secure printing or printing with passwords allows the printing of confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Job Options tab.
  - 3. Under Job Type, select Secure Print.

#### **NOTE**

If you have already stored a Secure Print document on the hard disk drive and have not yet printed it, click the PIN button and enter a new name for the current document.

a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name, and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



 Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

PostScript Driver

General Layout Paper/Quality Job Options Color Overlay

Cuality

Tob Type

C Normal

Phot and Print

Store to HDD

PiN...

Copies 1 2 7 Collate

PCL Driver



- Enter the number of copies and, if required, check the Collate box.
- Click Print. The document will be stored on the printer's hard disk.
- **6.** Go to the printer and print out the document using the front panel (see below).

# Printing a confidential document from the front panel

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- 4. Press the SELECT button.

The document will print and be deleted from the hard disk drive.

# Deleting the confidential document before printing it

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

#### **NOTE**

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

#### STORE TO HARD DISK

Store to Hard Disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead stationery, etc.

#### **NOTE**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, click the appropriate driver on the General tab, then click the Job Options tab.
  - Enter the number of required copies and, if required, check the Collate box, then select Store to HDD.

PostScript Driver







#### **NOTE**

If you've already stored a document on the hard disk drive and want to store another one, click the PIN button and enter a new Job Name. a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- b. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.
- 4. Click **Print**. The document will be stored on the hard disk and can then be printed on demand, or deleted, using the procedures given below.

# To print the stored document

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the document.

# To delete a stored job from the hard disk drive

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### **NOTE**

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

#### PRINTING OVERLAYS

# What are Overlays?

An Overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (supplied on some models, optional on others), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

# An example of using Overlays

Suppose that you have created and stored three files in the printer using the Storage Device Manager:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

#### To create overlays:

- Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead) and generate a PRN file (print file) using the printer driver.
- 2. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format, and download it to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.
- An overlay may consist of more than one component file.

# Creating documents to use as overlays

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

#### **PCL Driver**

To create a print (PRN) file:

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the "Print To File" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- **3.** Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PCL driver to do this.

- **4.** Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
- 5. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
- 6. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click Print.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

#### **PostScript**

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the Print To File option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click Properties... This should open the printer driver settings.
- 4. Select the Job Options tab, and click the Overlays... button.
- 5. Choose Create Form from the menu.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click OK to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

# Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how download this file to the printer using the Storage Device Manager.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

- 1. Launch Storage Device Manager and allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
- 2. Click Project then New Project.
- Select Add File to Project from the Project menu, and select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.

**PCL:** This automatically generates a BIN file.

# **Important!**

At this step, you will see in the project window that the BIN file is assigned an ID number. You can change this ID number by double-clicking it, and entering a new one in the ID field.

**PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive.* 

#### NOTE

For PCL and PS: this is important because you need to use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. Therefore, it is recommended you change the ID number or name from the default value and *note it for later use*.

**4.** Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.

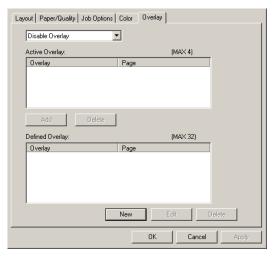
5. Select the Project menu and then choose Send Project Files to Printer.

This downloads the file to the printer. The Storage Device Manager displays "Command Issued" to indicate that the file was downloaded successfully.

6. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# **Defining Overlays: PostScript**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Click the Overlay button.



5. Click the New button.

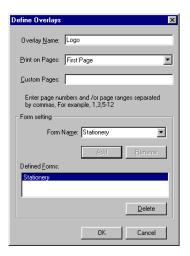


Enter the file name of the overlay in the Overlay Name box, and select the pages on which it is to be printed.

#### **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

7. Enter or select a form name in the drop-down box under Form setting, then click Add.



#### **NOTE**

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- 8. Click OK.
- **9.** If required, continue to add files to the overlay by repeating steps 5 through 8.

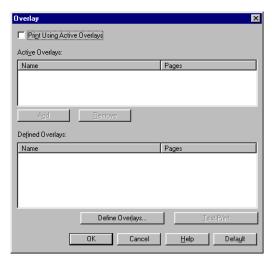
10. Highlight the overlay name(s) under Defined Overlay and click Add to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay (to select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name).



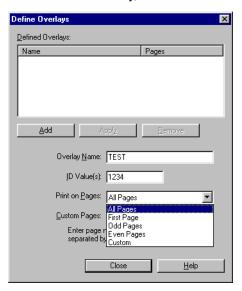
- **11.** Select **Use Overlay** from the drop-down list at the top of the box, then click **OK**.
- **12.** Click **OK** to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

# **Defining Overlays: PCL**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click Printing Preferences.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab.
- 4. Click the Overlay... button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



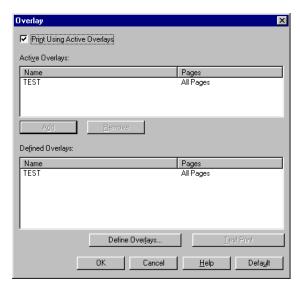
6. Enter the file name of the overlay in the Overlay Name box.

#### **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

- Enter the ID of the file in ID Values. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
- Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from Print on Pages or use Custom Pages to select specific page numbers in the document, then click Add.
- 9. Click Close.
- Highlight the overlay name under Defined Overlay and click the Add button to add the overlay to the list in Active Overlays.

11. Select Print Using Active Overlays.

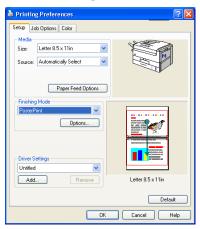


- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click OK to close the Printing Preferences dialog box.

#### PRINTING POSTERS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces which print enlarged on separate sheets. Then the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, click the PCL driver on the **General** tab, then click the **Setup** tab.
- 3. Under Finishing Mode, select Poster Print.



4. Click Options... and enter the configuration details



- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Click Print.

# Windows Me/98/95 Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

#### WHICH PRINTER DRIVER TO USE?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe<sup>®</sup> PostScript<sup>®</sup> (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including ".eps" files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This will be more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or you will be printing PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation performance will be faster and graphics will be printed at their best quality.

### **NOTE**

The line art graphics in th is manual are PostScript. So if you plan to print parts of this manual choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise the line art graphics will only print at low resolution.

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers: select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can print using the alternative driver whenever you need to.

#### **ENABLING INSTALLED OPTIONS IN THE DRIVERS**

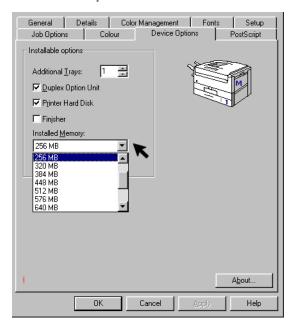
Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

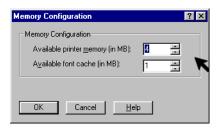
# For additional memory

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Options tab.



- 4. Under **Installed Memory**, adjust the amount of memory to be the same as that now installed in the printer, as shown in the MenuMap (to generate a MenuMap printout, see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44).
- To specify usable printer memory size, click the Memory... button. The driver automatically adjusts font cache size according to the memory option selected under Installed.



6. Click OK twice.

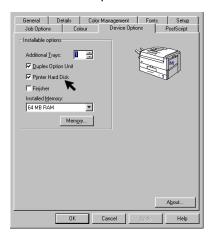
# For the internal hard disk drive

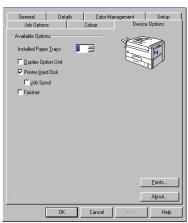
# PostScript or PCL driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Options tab, check Printer Hard Disk.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver



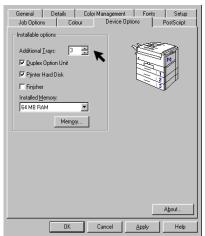


# For additional paper trays

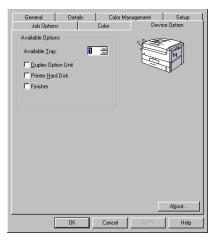
# PostScript or PCL driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- On the Device Options tab, select the number of trays installed (not including the Multi-purpose tray).





PCL Driver



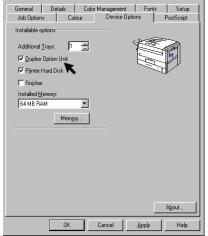
# For the duplex unit

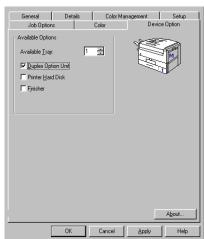
# PostScript or PCL driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Options tab, check Duplex Option Unit.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver





# For the high capacity feeder

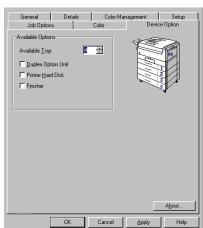
# PostScript or PCL driver

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- On the Device Options tab, select the number of trays installed.

PostScript Driver







# CHANGING DEFAULTS FOR PAPER FEED, SIZE AND MEDIA IN THE DRIVER

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

#### **NOTE**

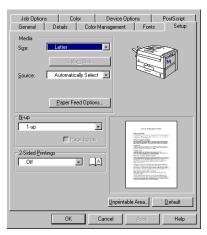
If the defaults set manually in the printer menu differ from those you set in the printer driver, the printer will not print and the LCD will display an error message.

The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

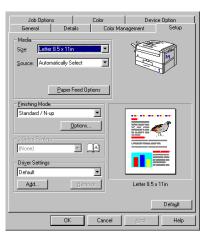
### PostScript and PCL drivers

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Setup tab.

PostScript Driver



**PCL** Driver



4. Select the required paper size under Size.

5. Select the required paper feed under Source.

#### **NOTE**

If a paper tray is selected the Type or Weight field becomes visible.

Select the required paper type under Type (PostScript) or Weight (PCL).

#### **NOTE**

If Printer Setting is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.

Click Paper Feed Options and make any other selections then click OK.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



8. Click **OK** to close the printer dialog box.

# **Network Printer Status utility**

· Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. If the utility is installed, you will see the following changes to the printer driver **Properties** dialog box:

- · a new Status tab is added
- an Option button is added to the Device Option tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- · total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

# **Important!**

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver will automatically ping the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box. This causes a significant delay until the Properties box opens. To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows Me/98/95 Operation

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features including:

- N-up printing (see page 283)
- Custom page sizes (see page 285)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 289)
- Duplex printing (see page 290)
- Watermarks (see page 294)
- Collating (see page 296)
- Font substitution (see page 297)
- Proof and Print (see page 298)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 302)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 305)
- Using overlays (see page 308)
- Printing posters (see page 320)

#### **NOTE**

Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.

## FACTORS THAT AFFECT COLOR PRINTING

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration*. Some of the most important factors are listed below.

# Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues and these cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

# **Viewing conditions**

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

# **Printer driver color settings**

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# **Monitor settings**

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

#### **NOTE**

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many modern monitors allow the color temperature to be adjusted using the monitor's control panel.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

#### 5000k\*

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

#### • 6500k

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

#### • 9300k

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# How your software application displays color

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

# Paper type

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

#### CHOOSING A COLOR MATCHING METHOD

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer. There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

#### **NOTE**

These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications will override any color matching settings in the printer driver without warning.

#### RGB or CMYK?

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method makes distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print will be in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Matching Photographic Images**

### **RGB** only

Oki Color Matching (see page 276) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

#### **RGB or CMYK**

If you are printing photographic images from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows ICM color matching" on page 281), and then print using the ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space).

# Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)

### **RGB** only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 276), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 278).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 272).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

- If you are printing from a graphics application such as
  Adobe Photoshop, you may be able to use Soft-Proofing to
  simulate the printed image on your monitor. To do this, you
  can use the ICC-Profiles provided by Oki (see "Windows
  ICM color matching" on page 281), and then print using the
  ICC profiles as the Print Space (or Output space) (PS only).
- Alternatively, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric setting (see page 278).

# **Printing Vivid Colors**

# **RGB** only

 Use Oki Color Matching (see page 276), with the Monitor 6500k Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

 Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 278) with the Saturation option.

# **COLOR MATCHING: PCL DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The Color Matching options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

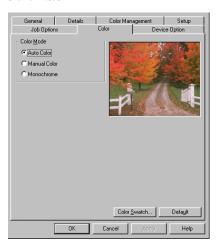
#### **NOTE**

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

# To manually set the color matching options in the PCL driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the appropriate printer name and click File, then Properties.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



 Click Manual Color under Color Mode, then click Natural under Color Setting.



**4.** Select the method you wish to use:

## Monitor (6500K) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

#### Monitor (6500K) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

# Monitor (9300K)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

#### **Digital Camera**

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### **sRGB**

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

- **5.** Set any other required parameters using the on-line Help for guidance.
- **6.** When you are done, click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.

# The Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

# An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File, then Properties.
- 3. Click the Color tab.
- 4. Click Color Swatch to print the color swatch samples.
- **5.** Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
- **6.** Using your program's color picker, enter these same RGB values (from step 5), and change the logo to that color.

#### **NOTE**

The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.

# **COLOR MATCHING: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

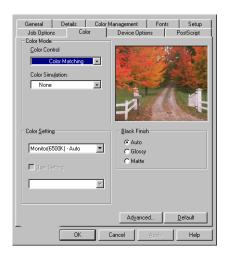
Some of the color matching options only work on certain types of data. The table below summarizes the various color-matching options available in the PostScript driver, and what types of data they affect.

Color Matching Option	RGB data	CMYK data
Oki Color Matching	Yes	No
PostScript Color Matching	Yes	Yes
Windows ICM Matching <sup>a</sup>	Yes	No
Using ICC Profiles	Yes	No

a. Not Windows NT 4.0

# To manually set the color matching options in the PostScript driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File  $\rightarrow$  Properties.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



- 4. Select the method to use from the Color Control drop-down list box under Color Mode:
  - a. Color Control = OKI Color Matching
  - b. Color Control = PostScript Color Matching
  - c. Color Control = Windows ICM
  - d. Color Control = Using ICC Profiles
  - e. Color Control = No Color Matching
  - f. Color Control = Print in greyscale

#### a. Color Control = OKI Color Matching

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB* data only.

Select the type to be used from the drop-down list box under **Color Setting**:



# Monitor (6500K) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

# Monitor (6500K) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text.

# Monitor (9300K)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K..

## **Digital Camera**

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

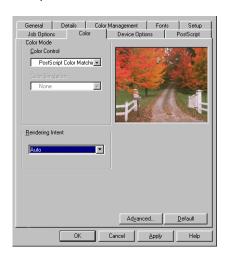
#### **sRGB**

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

# b. Color Control = PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. Select the rendering type from the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list box.



### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The rendering intents that the printer driver provides are listed below:

#### Auto

Best choice for printing general documents.

### - Perceptual

Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image. This may change the overall appearance of an image as all the colors are shifted together.

#### Saturation

Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.

#### Relative Colorimetric

Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white; i.e. unlike Absolute Colorimetric, this attempts to take the paper white into account.

#### Absolute Colorimetric

Best for printing solid colors and tints, such as Company logos etc. Matches colors common to both devices exactly, and clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

#### c. Color Control = Windows ICM

This is the color management system built into Windows. See "Windows ICM color matching" on page 281.

# d. Color Control = Using ICC Profiles

This option provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. See "OKI "Using ICC Profiles" feature" on page 282.

# e. Color Control = No Color Matching

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching.

# f. Color Control = Print in greyscale

This option prints all documents as monochrome.

#### WINDOWS ICM COLOR MATCHING

- ICM is the color management system built into Windows.
- Affects RGB data only.
- Can be associated with either the PCL or PS driver.

Windows ICM uses ICC profiles for your monitor and printer; these profiles describe the colors that your device is capable of reproducing. ICC profiles can be associated with your printer via the **Color Management** tab of the printer driver.

Depending on how you have installed the printer driver, the color profiles may already be associated with the driver.

To associate ICC Color Profiles with the printer driver:

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File, then Properties.
- Click the Color Management tab.
- 4. Under "Color Profiles currently associated with this printer" you should see the names of profiles that match your printer model. If you do not see any profiles associated with the driver, click "Add..." and locate the ICC profiles for your printer.

Windows ICM uses the information in these profiles to convert colors in your documents to colors that the printer can reproduce. The way in which this conversion is performed can be controlled via the ICM Intent control in the printer driver

#### NOTE

Oki also provides an alternative to Windows ICM with the Color Match "Using ICC Profiles" feature. This is similar to Windows ICM, but offers several additional features.

# OKI "USING ICC PROFILES" FEATURE

Affects RGB data only.

This provides a method of matching RGB colors similar to Windows ICM matching. The main advantage it has over Windows ICM color matching is that it provides a method of printing using both input and output profiles. Windows ICM matching only allows output profiles to be chosen.

**Input Profiles** (e.g., a digital camera) provide information about the color in the original device that was used to capture or display the image data. For example, an input device could be a scanner, digital camera, or monitor.

**Output Profiles** (e.g., the ES 3037 printer) provide information about the device to which you are printing.

The Using ICC Profiles feature uses both the input and output profiles to generate a CRD (Color Rendering Dictionary), which is used to match the colors as closely as possible.

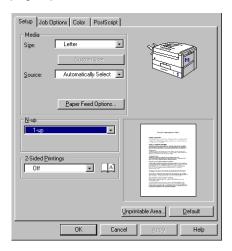
#### NOTE

This feature may not work for all application programs. However, many professional graphics applications offer a similar feature in their print settings, with the ability to choose a source (input) color space, and a print (output) color space

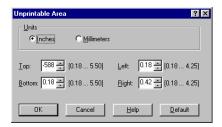
# PRINTING MULTIPLE PAGES ON ONE SHEET (N-UP PRINTING)

# N-Up printing using the PostScript driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Setup tab, under N-up, select the required number of pages per sheet.



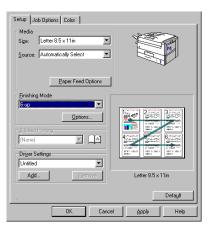
Click Unprintable Area and set the margin parameters, then click OK.



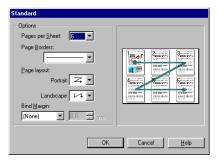
- 5. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 6. Print the document.

# N-Up printing using the PCL driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- **3.** On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select the required number of pages per sheet.



Click Options and select the page borders and layout, then click OK.



- **5.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 6. Print the document.

#### PRINTING CUSTOM PAGE SIZES

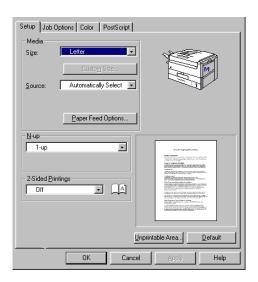
Custom page sizes can only be printed from the Multi-purpose tray. The printer media size for the Multi-purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use (range 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm] wide x 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm] long).

# Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver

#### **NOTE**

A maximum of three custom paper sizes can be defined in the PostScript driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PS driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- Click the Setup tab, then select Custom Page 1, Custom Page 2 or Custom Page 3 in the Size drop-down list under Media.



#### 4. Click Custom Size.



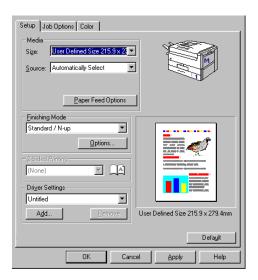
- 5. Type in the name you wish to use for the custom paper size in the Paper name box. Enter the width and length for the custom paper and select Transverse if you wish to rotate the image by 90 degrees.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Check that the name of the custom paper size appears in the Size box.
- **8.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 9. Print the document.

# Printing custom pages using the PCL driver

#### **NOTE**

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- 3. Click the Setup tab, then select User Defined, in the Size. box under Media.



#### **NOTE**

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK and the driver will automatically make the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

The Set Free Size dialog box appears.

4. Enter the width and length measurements then click OK.



Check that User Defined now appears in the Size box on the Setup tab..

#### **NOTE**

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options, then click Custom Size.
- Enter the relevant information in Width and Height and give your document size a name under Name.
- · Click Add.
- Click OK twice.
  - 6. Click OK.

The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.

- 7. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box
- 8. Print the document.

#### CHANGING THE RESOLUTION FOR A PRINT JOB

#### NOTE

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name. then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below: note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
  - 3. Click the Job Options tab.
  - 4. Select the required printing resolution under Quality.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



- 5. Select Toner Saving if appropriate.
- 6. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- Print the document.

# DUPLEX PRINTING (PRINTING ON BOTH SIDES OF THE PAPER)

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m²).
- Paper must be loaded print side up.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing. The MP tray cannot be used for duplex printing.

#### NOTE

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name, then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below. Note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.

To print a document on both sides of the paper:

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Setup tab, from 2-sided Printing select Long Edge binding or Short Edge binding.

PostScript Driver

Setup Job Options Color PostScript

Media
Sige: Letter

Coston Fore:

Source: Automatically Select 

Paper Feed Options...

Paper Feed Options...

Paper Jup

1-up

PCL Driver

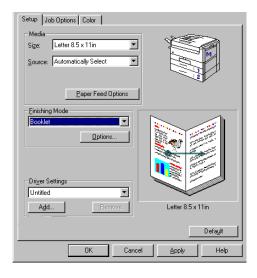


- 4. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 5. Print the document.

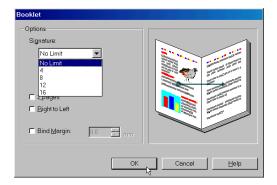
# PRINTING BOOKLETS: PCL ONLY, WINDOWS Me ONLY

#### **NOTES**

- Available only in the Windows Me Operating System (not available for Windows 98 or 95).
- Available in the PCL printer driver only (but not on some network connections; see the Help file).
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - **2.** In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
  - 3. On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Booklet in the drop-down box.



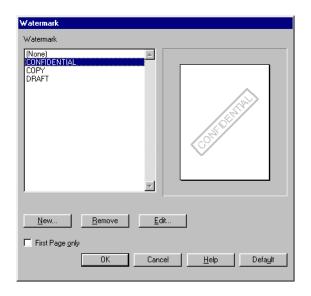
4. Click Options and set Signature, 2Pages, Right to Left and Bind Margin as required, then click OK.



- 5. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 6. Print the document.

## **PRINTING WATERMARKS**

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- Click the Job Options tab, then click Watermark.The Watermark dialog box appears.
- 4. Select a name from the Watermark list.



#### **NOTE**

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

· Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark and select the font, size, angle, etc., to be used.
- · Click OK.
  - **5.** If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
  - 6. Click OK.
  - 7. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
  - 8. Print the document.

#### COLLATING

Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. However, printers with a hard disk drive will provide greater performance.

# **Important**

If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

The following instructions explain how to select collating using the printer driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- Click the Job Options tab: under Job Type, enter the number of copies required and—only if the application has no collate option—select Collate.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver

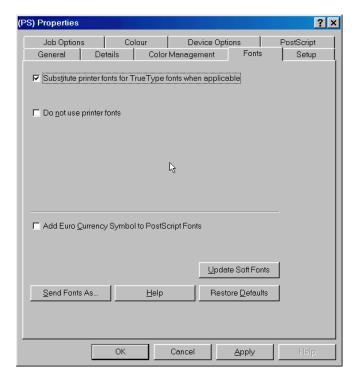




- **4.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- **5.** Print the document.

# FONT SUBSTITUTION: POSTSCRIPT ONLY

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printer.
- Right click the appropriate PS driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- 3. Click the **Fonts** tab, and select the type of font substitution from the various options given (use the on-line Help screen for information).



**4.** Click **OK** to engage the new settings and close the Properties dialog box.

#### PROOF AND PRINT

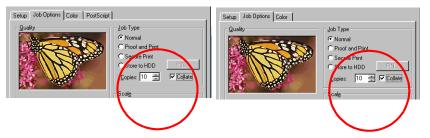
Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

#### **NOTES**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.
  - **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
  - 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
  - Click the Job Options tab, enter the number of copies and, if required, select Collate.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver



- a. Under Job Type, select Proof and Print.
- b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- c. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.
- 4. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- **5.** Print the document. The document is stored on the hard disk drive, and one copy is printed for checking.
- **6.** After checking the proof, you then print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document using the procedures given below.

# **Printing copies**

- **1.** Press the MENU button to access the **PRINT JOBS MENU**, then press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

# **Deleting copies**

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the on-line Help for Oki Storage Device Manager.

# SECURE PRINTING (PRINTING CONFIDENTIAL DOCUMENTS)

Secure printing or printing with passwords allows the printing of confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.
  - **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
  - 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

- On the Job Options tab, enter the number of copies and, if required, check the Collate box.
  - Under Job Type select Secure Print.
  - b. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name, and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



 Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

PostScript Driver

Setup Job Options Color PostScript

Quality

Chornel Color PostScript

Job Type

Normal

Proof and Print

Secure Print

Store to HDD

Dopies: 0 — Collate

Scale

PCL Driver



- **5.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- Print the document. The document will be stored on the printer's hard disk.
- 7. Go to the printer and print out the document using the front panel (see below).

# Printing a confidential document from the front panel

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- 4. Press the SELECT button.

The document will print and be deleted from the hard disk drive.

# Deleting the confidential document before printing it

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the on-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

#### STORE TO HARD DISK

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be temporarily stored on the hard disk before printing.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for store to hard disk to operate correctly.
- Store to hard disk may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
  - 3. Click the Job Options tab.

- 4. On the Job Options tab.
  - Under Job Type select Store to HDD, enter the number of required copies and, if required, check the Collate box.
  - Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



5. Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

PostScript Driver

Job Type

C Normal

C Proof and Print

Secure Print

Store to HDD

Setup Job Options | Color | Job Type ○ Normal C Proof and Print Secure Print € Store to HDD PI<u>N</u>... Copies: 1 🛨 🗆 Collate Copies: 1 🛨 🗆 Collate

PCL Driver

Setup Job Options | Color | PostScript |

- 6. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Print the document. It will be stored on the hard disk.
- 8. The document can then be printed or deleted using the procedures given below.

# **Printing copies**

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the document.

# Deleting the stored job from the hard disk drive

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### **NOTE**

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the on-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

#### PRINTING OVERLAYS

# What are Overlays?

An Overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (supplied on some models, optional on others), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

# An example of using Overlays:

Suppose that you have created and stored three files in the printer using the Storage Device Manager:

- the company logo
- the company address
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

# To create overlays:

- Create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead) and generate a PRN file (print file) using the printer driver.
- 2. Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format, and download it to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

#### **NOTE**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.
- An overlay may consist of more than one component file.

# Creating documents to use as overlays

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

#### **PCL Driver**

To create a print (PRN) file:

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the "Print To File" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click Properties.... This should open the printer driver settings.

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PCL driver to do this.

- **4.** Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.
- 5. Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
- 6. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click Print.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

#### **PostScript**

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the Print To File option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click Properties... This should open the printer driver settings.
- 4. Select the Job Options tab, and click the Overlays... button.
- 5. Choose Create Form from the menu.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click OK to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

# Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how download this file to the printer using the Storage Device Manager.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

- **1.** Launch Storage Device Manager and allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
- 2. Click Project then New Project.

3. Select Add File to Project from the Project menu, and select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.

**PCL:** This automatically generates a BIN file.

# **Important!**

At this step, you will see in the project window that the BIN file is assigned an ID number. You can change this ID number by double-clicking it, and entering a new one in the ID field.

**PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive*.

#### NOTE

For PCL and PS: this is important because you need to use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. Therefore, it is recommended you change the ID number or name from the default value and *note it for later use*.

- **4.** Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.
- Select the Project menu and then choose Send Project Files to Printer

This downloads the file to the printer. The Storage Device Manager displays "Command Issued" to indicate that the file was downloaded successfully.

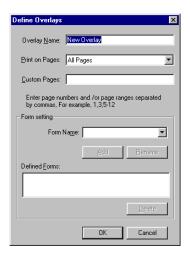
6. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# **Defining Overlays: PostScript**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab, then click the Overlay button.



4. Click the New button.

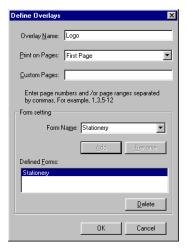


Enter the file name of the overlay in the Overlay Name box, and select the pages on which it is to be printed.

#### **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

**6.** Enter or select a form name in the drop-down box under **Form setting**, then click **Add**.



#### **NOTE**

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- 7. Click OK.
- **8.** If required, continue to add files to the overlay by repeating steps 4 through 7.

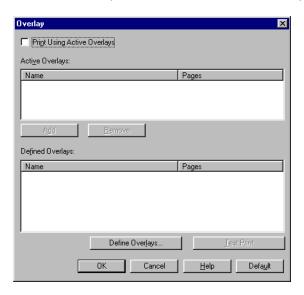
9. Highlight the overlay name(s) under Defined Overlay and click Add to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay (to select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name).



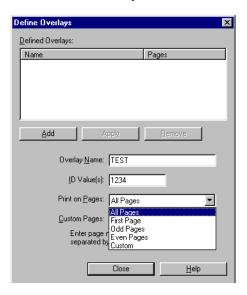
- 10. Select Use Overlay from the drop-down list, then click OK.
- **11.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.

# **Defining Overlays: PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab, then click the Overlay... button.



4. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



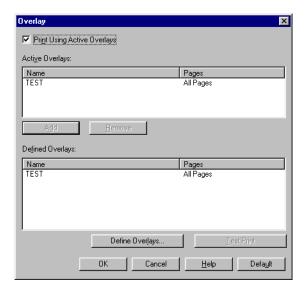
**5.** Enter the file name of the overlay in the **Overlay Name** box.

#### **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

- **6.** Enter the ID of the file in **ID Values**. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
- Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from Print on Pages or use Custom Pages to select specific page numbers in the document, then click Add
- 8. Click Close.
- Highlight the overlay name under Defined Overlay and click the Add button to add the overlay to the list in Active Overlays.

10. Select Print Using Active Overlays.

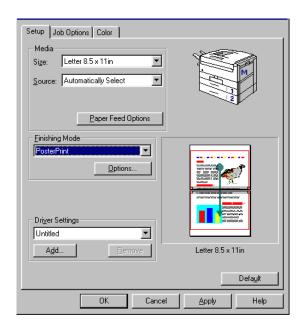


- 11. Click OK.
- 12. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.

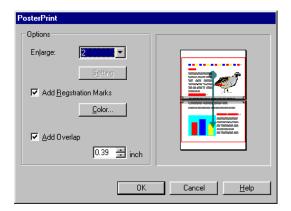
## PRINTING POSTERS: PCL ONLY

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces which print enlarged on separate sheets. Then the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the print dialog box, click the appropriate PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- 3. Click the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Poster Print.



4. Click Options... and enter the configuration details.



- 5. Click OK twice.
- 6. Click OK to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Print the document.

# Windows NT 4.0 Printer Drivers

See your printed *Software Installation Guide* for information on installing printer drivers.

## WHICH PRINTER DRIVER TO USE?

Your printer comes with Windows drivers for PCL and Adobe<sup>®</sup> PostScript<sup>®</sup> (PS). You can install either of these, or both if you wish. Which driver you choose depends on your application.

- If you use TrueType fonts and you do not print PostScript (including ".eps" files) graphics, choose the PCL driver. This will be more efficient and give good results.
- If you use PostScript fonts or you will be printing PostScript graphics, choose the PostScript driver. In this situation performance will be faster and graphics will be printed at their best quality

## **NOTE**

The line art graphics in this manual are PostScript. So if you plan to print parts of this manual choose the PostScript driver. Otherwise the line art graphics will only print at low resolution.

If neither driver seems to cover all your needs, you should install both drivers: select the same printer port (LPT1 or Network Port) for both drivers during the installation.

Set the driver you plan to use most of the time to be your Windows default driver. Most applications allow you to choose a different printer from within the print dialog, so you can print using the alternative driver whenever you need to.

# **ENABLING INSTALLED OPTIONS IN THE DRIVERS**

Certain options such as additional memory, the duplexer, or additional trays may be installed in your printer.

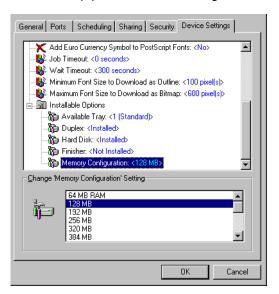
Before using the printer, you must enter the printer driver(s) and enable the options. You only need to do this once.

# For additional memory: PostScript driver only

If you have additional memory in your printer, use these instructions to update the Windows PostScript driver so that it recognizes the additional memory:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab.

4. Under Installable Options, click Memory Configuration, then select the memory in the Change 'Memory Configuration' Setting list which matches what is now installed in the printer, as shown in the MenuMap (to generate a MenuMap printout, see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44)

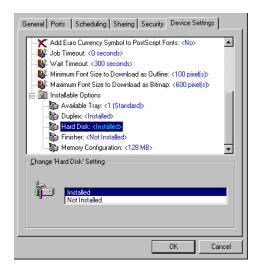


5. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

#### For the internal hard disk drive

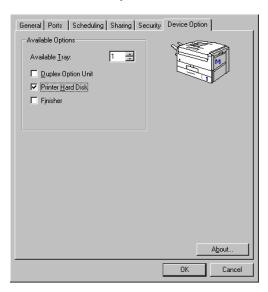
# **PostScript driver**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. Click the Device Settings tab.
- Under Installable Options, make sure Hard Disk is set to Installed.



#### **PCL** driver

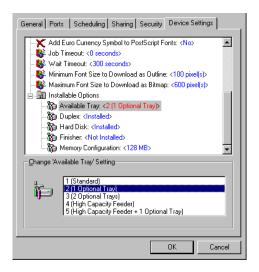
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Printer Hard Disk.



# For additional paper trays

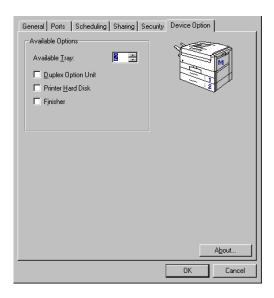
# **PostScript driver**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Trays, then select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray) from the Change 'Available Tray' Setting list.



#### **PCL** driver

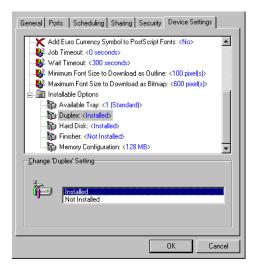
- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- **3.** On the **Device Option** tab, select the appropriate number of trays (not including the Multi-purpose tray).



# For the duplex unit

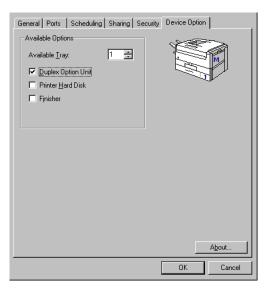
# **PostScript driver**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, make sure that Duplex is set to Installed in the Change 'Duplex' Setting list.



#### **PCL** driver

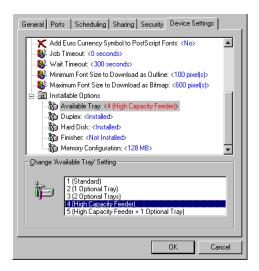
- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Duplex Option Unit.



# For the high capacity feeder

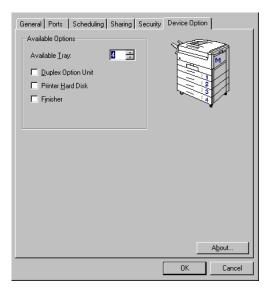
# PostScript driver

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Available Tray, then select the appropriate setting (4 or 5) in the Change 'Available Tray' Setting list.



#### **PCL** driver

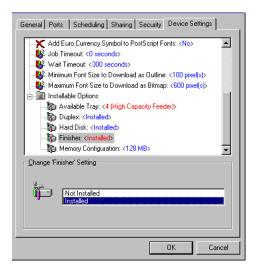
- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- On the Device Option tab, under Available Options, select the number of trays installed (4 or 5) in the Available Tray list.



#### For the finisher

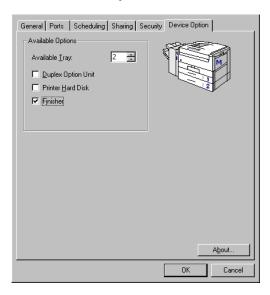
# **PostScript driver**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- Click the Device Settings tab. Under Installable Options, click Finisher, then select Installed in the Change 'Finisher' Setting list.



#### **PCL** driver

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click File then Properties.
- 3. On the Device Option tab, click Finisher.



# CHANGING DEFAULTS FOR PAPER FEED, SIZE AND MEDIA IN THE DRIVER

The normal default for these items is automatic detection.

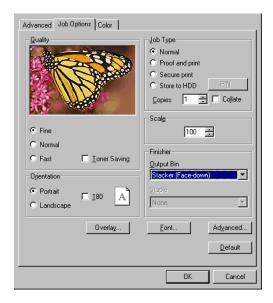
#### NOTE

If the defaults set manually in the printer menu differ from those you set in the printer driver, the printer will not print and the LCD will display an error message.

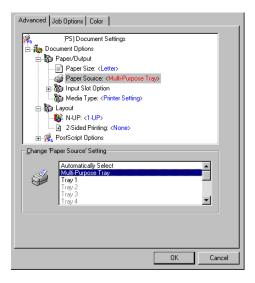
The following printer driver instructions are given as a guide only. Some software applications require the paper feed, size and media settings to be selected from within the software (under Page Setup).

### PostScript drivers

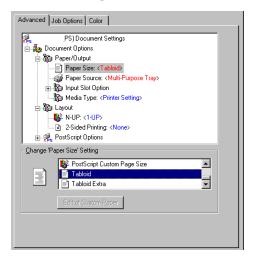
- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Document Defaults**.
- If you will be using heavy media, transparencies, envelopes or labels, click the Job Options tab and set the Output Bin under Finisher to Stacker(Face-up).



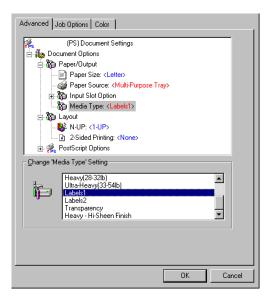
- 4. Click the Advanced tab. Under Document Options → Paper/ Output:
  - a. Click Paper Source and select the paper feed in the Change 'Paper Source' Setting list.



b. Click Paper Size and select the size in the Change 'Paper Size' Setting list.



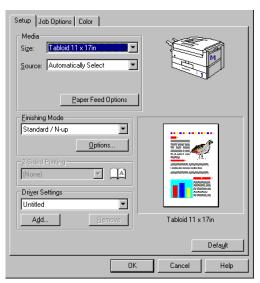
c. Click Media Type and select the media from the Change 'Media Type' Setting list.



5. Click OK twice and close the Default dialog box.

#### **PCL** drivers

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click Document Defaults.
- 3. In the Setup tab, under Media, select the required paper size in the Size drop-down list.



4. Select the required paper feed under Source.

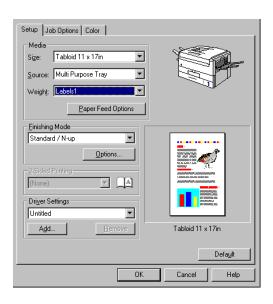
#### **NOTE**

If a paper tray is selected the Weight field becomes visible.

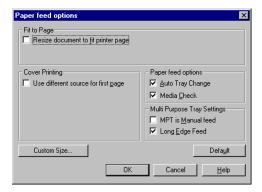
5. Select the required paper type under Weight.

# **NOTE**

- If Printer Setting is selected, make sure the printer has been set to the correct media type.
- If a Warning dialog box appears indicating a setting conflict, click OK and the driver will automatically change to correct the problem.



Click the Paper Feed Options button and make any other selections then click OK.



7. Click OK twice and close the Default dialog box.

# **Network Printer Status utility**

Available on TCP/IP network connection only.

The Network Printer Status utility is available if your administrator has installed it. If the utility is installed, you will see the following changes to the printer driver **Properties** dialog box:

- a new Status tab is added.
- an Option button is added to the Device Option tab.

This utility allows you to view (but not change) the status of the following on the **Status** tab:

- paper trays installed and the media assigned to them.
- total size and percentage used of disk/memory.
- percentage of toner remaining.

# **Important!**

If you select **Automatic Status Update** in the **Status** tab, the driver will automatically ping the printer for the latest status information every time you open the **Properties** dialog box. This causes a significant delay until the Properties dialog box opens. To avoid this, use the **Update Status** button in the **Status** tab to manually update the information on demand.

# Windows NT 4.0 Operation

This section explains how to set up color printing and how to use the printer's features including:

- N-up printing (see page 359)
- Custom page sizes (see page 362)
- Selecting print resolution (see page 370)
- Duplex printing (see page 372)
- Watermarks (see page 377)
- Collating (see page 379)
- Proof and Print (see page 380)
- Secure print: printing confidential documents (see page 383)
- Storing files to the hard disk drive (see page 387)
- Using overlays (see page 390)
- Printing posters (see page 401)

#### NOTE

Most applications allow the printer properties to be accessed from within the document print dialog box.

# FACTORS THAT AFFECT COLOR PRINTING

The PCL and PostScript printer drivers supplied with your printer provide several controls for changing the color output. For general use the default driver settings produce good results for most documents.

Many applications have their own color settings, and these may override the settings in the printer driver. Please refer to the documentation for your software application for details on how that particular program's color management functions.

If you wish to manually adjust the color settings in your printer driver, please be aware that *color reproduction is a complex topic, and there are many factors to take into consideration*. Some of the most important factors are listed below.

# Differences between the range of colors a monitor or printer can reproduce

- Neither a printer nor a monitor is capable of reproducing the full range of colors visible to the human eye. Each device is restricted to a certain range of colors. In addition to this, a printer cannot reproduce all of the colors displayed on a monitor, and vice versa.
- Both devices use very different technologies to represent color. A monitor uses Red, Green and Blue (RGB) phosphors (or LCDs), a printer uses Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black (CMYK) toner or ink.
- A monitor can display very vivid colors such as intense reds and blues and these cannot be easily produced on any printer using toner or ink. Similarly, there are certain colors, (some yellows for example), that can be printed, but cannot be displayed accurately on a monitor. This disparity between monitors and printers is often the main reason that printed colors do not match the colors displayed on screen.

# **Viewing conditions**

A document can look very different under various lighting conditions. For example, the colors may look different when viewed standing next to a sunlit window, compared to how they look under standard office fluorescent lighting.

# **Printer driver color settings**

The driver settings for Manual color can change the appearance of a document. There are several options available to help match the printed colors with those displayed on screen. These options are explained in subsequent sections of this User Manual.

# **Monitor settings**

The brightness and contrast controls on your monitor can change how your document looks on-screen. Additionally, your monitor color temperature influences how "warm" or "cool" the colors look.

#### **NOTE**

Several of the Color Matching options make reference to your monitor's Color Temperature. Many modern monitors allow the color temperature to be adjusted using the monitor's control panel.

There are several settings found on a typical monitor:

#### 5000k\*

Warmest; yellowish lighting, typically used in graphics arts environments.

#### • 6500k

Cooler; approximates daylight conditions.

#### • 9300k

Cool; the default setting for many monitors and television sets.

\*k = degrees Kelvin, a measurement of temperature

# How your software application displays color

Some graphics applications such as CorelDRAW® or Adobe® Photoshop® may display color differently from "office" applications such as Microsoft® Word. Please see your application's online help or user manual for more information.

# Paper type

The type of paper used can also significantly affect the printed color. For example, a printout on recycled paper can look duller than one on specially formulated glossy paper.

#### CHOOSING A COLOR MATCHING METHOD

There is no one way to achieve a good match between the document displayed on your monitor, and its printed equivalent. There are many factors involved in achieving accurate and reproducible color.

However, the following guidelines may help in achieving good color output from your printer. There are several suggested methods, depending on the type of document you are printing.

#### **NOTE**

These suggestions are for guidance only. Your results may vary depending on the application from which you are printing. Some applications will override any color matching settings in the printer driver without warning.

#### RGB or CMYK?

The guidelines for choosing a color matching method makes distinctions between Red, Green, Blue (RGB) and Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black (CMYK).

Generally, most documents you print will be in RGB format. This is the most common, and, if you do not know your document's color mode, assume that it is RGB.

Typically CMYK documents are only supported in professional Desktop Publishing and Graphics applications.

# **Matching Photographic Images**

# **RGB** only

Oki Color Matching (see page 354) is a generally a good choice. Select a matching method appropriate to your monitor.

# Matching Specific Colors (e.g., a Company logo)

# RGB only

- Oki Color Matching (see page 354), and the sRGB setting: PCL or PS driver.
- PostScript Color Matching using the Absolute Colorimetric option (see page 356).
- Use the Color Swatch Utility to print out a chart of RGB swatches and enter your desired RGB values in your application's color picker—PS only (see page 351).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

 If you are printing from a graphics application such as Adobe Photoshop, use PostScript Color Matching with the Absolute Colorimetric setting (see page 356).

# **Printing Vivid Colors**

# **RGB** only

Use Oki Color Matching (see page 354), with the Monitor 6500k
 Vivid, sRGB or Digital Camera settings (PCL or PS).

#### **RGB or CMYK**

 Use PostScript Color Matching (see page 356) with the Saturation option.

# **COLOR MATCHING: PCL DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The Color Matching options in the PCL driver can be used to help match your printed colors to the ones displayed on your monitor.

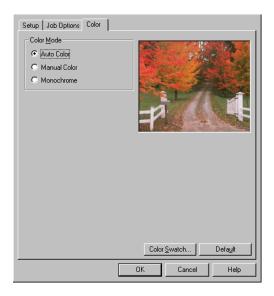
#### **NOTE**

The PCL driver's color options are only designed to work with RGB data.

If you are printing CMYK data, we recommend you use the PostScript driver.

# To manually set the color matching options in the PCL driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name and click Document Defaults.
- 3. Click the Color tab.



a. Click Manual Color under Color Mode, then click Natural under Color Setting.



#### 4. Select the method you wish to use:

#### Monitor (6500K) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

### Monitor (6500K) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics.

# Monitor (9300K)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 9300K.

## Digital Camera

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### sRGB

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color. The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

- **5.** Set any other required parameters using the on-line Help for guidance.
- 6. When you are done, click OK and close the Default dialog box.

# The Print Color Swatch Utility

For use with applications which allow you to set your own RGB values for colors.

The Color Swatch utility prints out charts of sample colors. Listed below each color are the corresponding RGB (Red, Green, Blue) values to use in your application to match that printed color.

# An example of using the Print Color Swatch function:

You wish to print a logo in a particular shade of red. The steps you would follow are:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Document Defaults**.
- Click the Color tab.
- **4.** Click the **Color Swatch** button to print the color swatch samples.
- 5. Select the shade of red that best suits your needs and make a note of the RGB value below that particular shade.
- **6.** Using your program's color picker, enter these same RGB values (from step 5), and change the logo to that color.

#### NOTE

The RGB color displayed on your monitor may not necessarily match what was printed on the color swatch. If this is the case, it is probably due to the difference between how your monitor and printer reproduce color.

# **COLOR MATCHING: POSTSCRIPT DRIVER**

# **Color Matching Options**

The PostScript driver offers several different methods of controlling the color output of the printer.

# To manually set the color matching options in the PostScript driver:

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the printer name and click **Document Defaults**.
- 3. Click the Color tab.

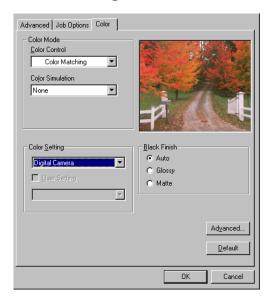


- 4. Select the method to use from the Color Control Method drop-down list under Color Mode:
  - a. Color Control = OKI Color Matching (see page 354)
  - b. Color Control = PostScript Color Matching (see page 356)
  - c. Color Control = No Color Matching (see page 358)
  - d. Color Control = Print in Grayscale (see page 358)

## a. Color Control = OKI Color Matching

This is OKI's proprietary color matching system, and affects *RGB* data only.

Select the type to be used from the drop-down list under **Color Setting**:



# Monitor (6500K) Perceptual

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

# Monitor (6500K) Vivid

Optimized for printing bright colors when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K. Ideal for office graphics and text.

# Monitor (9300K)

Optimized for printing photographs when using a monitor with a color temperature of 6500K.

# **Digital Camera**

Optimized for printing photographs taken with a digital camera. This tends to produce prints with lighter and brighter colors. For some photographs, other settings may be better depending on the subjects and the conditions under which they were taken.

#### sRGB

Optimized for matching specific colors, such as a company logo color.

The colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification, and only colors that fall outside the printable colors are modified.

# b. Color Control = PostScript Color Matching

This uses PostScript Color Rendering Dictionaries built into the printer, and affects both RGB and CMYK data. Select the rendering type from the **Rendering Intent** drop-down list.



#### Rendering Intents

When a document is printed, a conversion takes place from the document's color space to the printer color space. The rendering intents are essentially a set of rules that determine how this color conversion takes place.

The rendering intents that the printer driver provides are listed below:

#### - Auto

Best choice for printing general documents.

### - Perceptual

Best choice for printing photographs. Compresses the source gamut into the printer's gamut while maintaining the overall appearance of an image.

#### Saturation

Best choice for printing bright and saturated colors if you don't necessarily care how accurate the colors are. This makes it the recommended choice for graphs, charts, diagrams etc. Maps fully saturated colors in the source gamut to fully saturated colors in the printer's gamut.

#### Relative Colorimetric

Good for proofing CMYK color images on a desktop printer. Much like Absolute Colorimetric, except that it scales the source white to the (usually) paper white; i.e. unlike Absolute Colorimetric, this attempts to take the paper white into account.

#### Absolute Colorimetric

Best for printing solid colors and tints, such as Company logos etc. Matches colors common to both devices exactly, and clips the out of gamut colors to their nearest printed equivalent. Tries to print white as it appears on screen. The white of a monitor is often very different from paper white, so this may result in color casts, especially in the lighter areas of an image.

# c. Color Control = No Color Matching

Use this option to switch off all printer color matching.

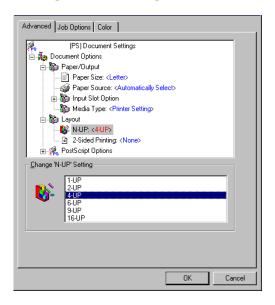
# d. Color Control = Print in Grayscale

This option prints all documents as monochrome.

# PRINTING MULTIPLE PAGES ON ONE SHEET (N-UP PRINTING)

# N-Up printing using the PostScript driver

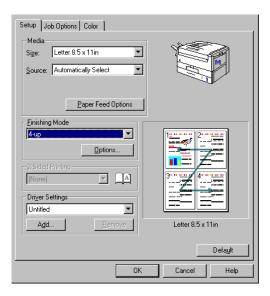
- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- In the Print dialog box, select the PS driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Advanced tab, under Document Options → Layout, click N-UP, then select the number of pages per sheet in the Change 'N-UP' Setting list.



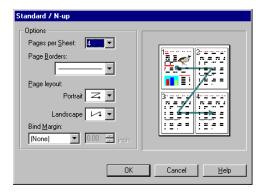
4. Click OK and print the document.

# N-Up printing using the PCL driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select  $File \rightarrow Print$ .
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- **3.** On the **Setup** tab, under **Finishing Mode**, select the number of pages per sheet.



4. Click the Options button and select the Page Borders, Page Layout and Bind Margin, then click OK.



5. Click OK and print the document.

## PRINTING CUSTOM PAGE SIZES

Custom page sizes can only be printed from the Multi-purpose tray. The printer media size for the Multi-purpose tray must be manually set in the driver to the custom paper size before use (range 3½ to 8½ inches [89 to 216 mm] wide x 5 to 14 inches [127 to 356 mm] long).

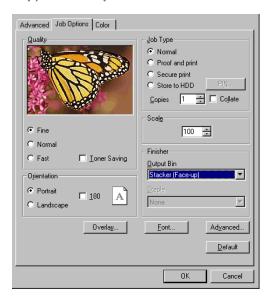
# Printing custom pages using the PostScript driver

## **NOTE**

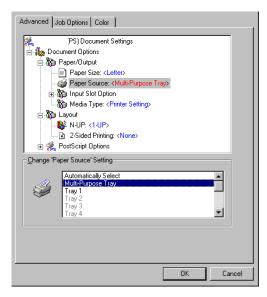
One custom paper size can be defined in the PostScript driver.

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PS driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

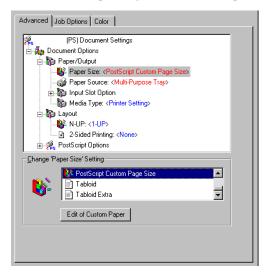
On the Job Options tab, under Finisher, select Stacker(Faceup) in the Output Bin list.



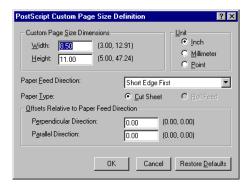
- 4. Click the Advanced tab. Under Document Options → Tray Source:
  - a. Click Paper Source and select Multi-Purpose Tray in the Change 'Paper Source' Setting list.



 Click Paper Size and select Postscript Custom Page Size in the Change 'Paper Size' Setting list.



5. Click the Edit of Custom Paper button.



**6.** Enter the Width and Height for the custom paper and select the Paper Feed Direction.

## **NOTE**

- Long Edge First = media feeds in long edge first
- Short Edge First = media feeds in short edge first
- Long Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
- Short Edge First (flipped) = Reserved for future use.
  - 7. Click OK twice, then print the document.

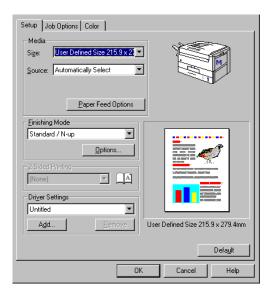
# Printing custom pages using the PCL driver

## **NOTE**

Up to 32 custom page sizes can be defined in the PCL driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Job Options tab, under Finisher, select Printer Face Up in the Output Bin list.

 On the Setup tab, under Media, select User Defined Size in the Size list.



#### **NOTE**

You may see a Warning dialog box indicating a conflict. If you do, click OK and the driver will automatically make the needed changes to correct for the conflict.

The Set Free Size dialog box appears.

**5.** Select the unit, then enter the width and length measurements to use, then click **OK**.



**6.** Check that **User Defined** now appears in the **Size** list on the **Setup** tab.

#### **NOTE**

To save the setting for future use:

- Click Paper Feed Options, then click Custom Size.
- Select the unit, then enter the relevant information for Width and Height and give your custom size a name under Name.
- Click Add.
- Click OK twice.

The Custom Page Size is added to the bottom of the Paper Size list.

7. Click OK and print the document.

## CHANGING THE RESOLUTION FOR A PRINT JOB

## **NOTE**

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs (default settings):

- Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name. then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below: note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, select the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
  - 3. Click the Job Options tab.

4. Select the required printing resolution under Quality.

PostScript Driver

Advanced Job Options Color Normal O Proof and print C Store to HDD Copies 1 🛨 □ Collate 100 C Fast ☐ <u>I</u>oner Saving Output Bin Stacker (Face-down) • • Portrait <u> 1</u>80 C Landscape Overlay... Eont...  $\underline{D} \text{efault}$ Cancel

PCL Driver



- 5. Select Toner Saving if appropriate.
- 6. Click OK and print the document.

# PRINTING ON BOTH SIDES OF THE PAPER (DUPLEX PRINTING)

#### NOTE

The optional duplex unit must be installed in the printer and enabled before duplex printing can be carried out.

- Standard paper sizes only.
- Paper weight range 20 to 28 lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m²).
- Paper must be loaded print side up.
- Only Tray 1, optional Trays 2 and 3, and the High Capacity Feeder trays can be used for duplex printing. The Multi-purpose tray *cannot* be used for duplex printing.

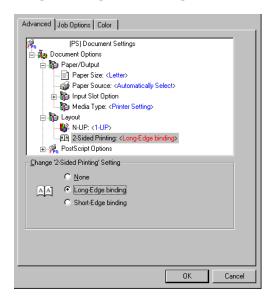
#### NOTE

These instructions explain how to change the settings as you are printing a job. If you wish to change the settings to apply to all jobs:

- Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- Right click the appropriate printer name. then select Properties.
- Follow steps 3, etc., below: note that the Properties screen for setting defaults will have more tabs.

# **Duplex printing using the PostScript driver**

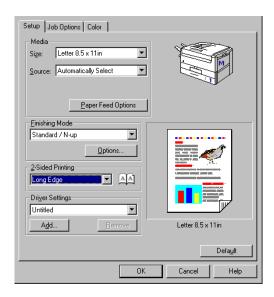
- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- In the Print dialog box, select the PS driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Advanced tab, under Document Options → Layout, click 2-Sided Printing and select Long Edge binding or Short Edge binding in the Change '2-Sided Printing' Setting list.



4. Click OK and print the document.

# **Duplex printing using the PCL driver**

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select  $File \rightarrow Print$ .
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Setup tab, under 2-Sided Printing, select Long Edge or Short Edge.



4. Click **OK** and print the document.

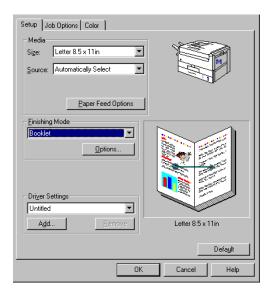
## PRINTING BOOKLETS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

#### **NOTES**

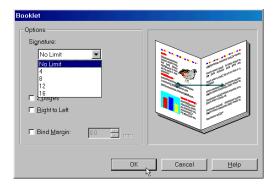
- You must have the duplex unit installed and enabled in order to print booklets.
- Not available on some network connections: see the Help file.
- Some software applications may not support booklet printing.
- The right-to-left setting allows a booklet to be printed for right to left reading, which is used in some languages.

# Printing booklets using the PCL driver

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- In the Print dialog box, select the PS driver, then click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Booklet in the list.



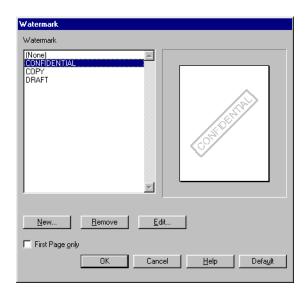
4. Click the Options button and set Signature, 2Pages, Right to Left and Bind Margin as required, then click OK.



**5.** Click **OK** and print the document.

## PRINTING WATERMARKS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- 3. On the Job Options tab, click the Watermark button.
- 4. Select a name from the Watermark list.



### NOTE

To create a new watermark or edit an existing watermark:

· Click the New or Edit button.



- Enter the text for the watermark and select the font, size, angle, etc., to be used.
- · Click OK.

The new watermark appears in the Watermark list.

- **5.** If you wish to print the watermark only on the first page of the document, select **First Page only**.
- **6.** Click **OK** twice and print the document.

## **COLLATING**

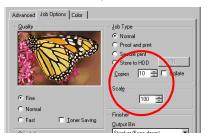
Collating can be carried out with or without a hard disk drive installed. However, printers with a hard disk drive will provide greater performance.

# **Important**

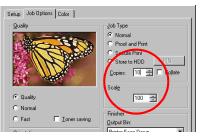
If your software application has a collate option, use it instead of the collate option in the printer driver.

- 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the appropriate driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- On the Job Options tab, under Job Type, enter the number of copies required and—only if the application has no collate option—select Collate.

PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



4. Click OK and print the document.

## PROOF AND PRINT

Proof and print allows printing of a single copy of a document for checking before printing multiple copies of the same document.

#### **NOTES**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled, to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy is printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF for proof and print to operate correctly.
- Proof and print may not be available in some software applications.
  - **1.** Open the file in your application and select **File**  $\rightarrow$  **Print**.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, select the appropriate driver.
  - 3. Select Print to file.
  - **4.** Click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).

- On the Job Options tab, under Job Type, select Proof and Print.
  - a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



- b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.
- **6.** Enter the number of copies and, if required, select **Collate**.

PostScript Driver

PCL Driver



- Click OK and print the document. A print file of the document is created and stored on the hard disk drive, and one copy is printed for checking.
- **8.** After checking the proof, print or delete (if incorrect) the remaining copies of the document using the procedures given below.

# **Printing copies**

- Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU, then
  press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the SELECT button to print the remaining copies of the document.

# **Deleting copies**

If the proof is not ready for printing, the job must be deleted from the printer:

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter your personal ID number using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until **ALL JOBS** or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the Select button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the on-line Help for Oki Storage Device Manager.

# SECURE PRINTING (PRINTING CONFIDENTIAL DOCUMENTS)

Secure printing or printing with passwords allows the printing of confidential documents on printers that are shared with other users.

### **NOTE**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for secure printing to operate correctly.
- Secure printing may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, select the appropriate driver.
  - 3. Select Print to file.
  - 4. Click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
  - 5. On the Job Options tab, under Job Type, select Secure Print.

#### **NOTE**

If you have already stored a Secure Print document on the hard disk drive and have not yet printed it, click the PIN button and enter a new name for the current document.

a. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name, and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



b. Type in a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

## PostScript Driver



PCL Driver



- **6.** Enter the number of copies and, if required, select **Collate**.
- 7. Click **OK** and print the document. A print file of the document is created and stored on the hard disk drive.
- **8.** Go to the printer and print out the document using the front panel (see below).

# Printing a confidential document from the front panel

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- 4. Press the SELECT button.

The document will print and be deleted from the hard disk drive.

# Deleting the confidential document before printing it

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- 2. Enter the personal ID number you set above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the CANCEL button to delete the job from the printer.

### **NOTE**

An alternative method of printing or deleting the remaining copies of the document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

## STORE TO HARD DISK

Store to hard disk (job spooling) allows print jobs to be prepared and stored on the hard disk for printing on demand. This is good for forms, generic memos, letterhead stationery, etc..

#### **NOTE**

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer and enabled.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for Store to Hard Disk to operate correctly.
- Store to Hard Disk may not be available in some software applications.
  - 1. Open the file in your application and select File → Print.
  - 2. In the Print dialog box, select the appropriate driver.
  - 3. Select Print to file.
  - 4. Click Properties (or Setup, or your application's equivalent).
  - Enter the number of copies and, if required, select Collate, then select Store to HDD.

#### **NOTE**

If you've already stored a document on the hard disk drive and want to store another one, click the PIN button and enter a new Job Name. Enter a job name of up to 16 characters under Job Name Setting and, if required, select Request Job Name for each print job.



Type a four digit personal ID number from 0000 to 7777, then click OK.

PostScript Driver

Setup Job Options Color 

PCL Driver



Job Type C Normal C Proof and Print C Store to HDD PI<u>N</u>... Copies: 10 ÷ ☑ Collate 100 C Normal Finisher Intermediate in Image 

I oner saving 

I oner savin Output Bin: Orientation Printer Face Down ▾ Portrait T 180 Y C Landscape ☐ <u>1</u>80 Eont. Advanced...

6. Click OK and print the document. A print file of the document is created and stored on the hard disk drive and can then be printed on demand, or deleted, using the procedures given below.

# To print the stored document

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- **4.** Press the SELECT button to print the document.

## To delete a stored document from the hard disk drive

- 1. Press the MENU button to access the PRINT JOBS MENU and press the SELECT button.
- **2.** Enter the personal ID number you selected above using the buttons on the printer control panel.
- **3.** Press the VALUE button until ALL JOBS or the required job name is displayed.
- Press the CANCEL button to delete the remaining copies of the document.
- **5.** When the deletion confirmation message appears, confirm by pressing the SELECT button.

#### NOTE

An alternative method of printing or deleting the stored document is to use the Oki Storage Device Manager. Please refer to the On-line Help for the Oki Storage Device Manager software.

# **PRINTING OVERLAYS**

## What are Overlays?

An Overlay can be a combination of graphics, fonts, or text that is stored in the printer's flash memory or on the hard disk (supplied on some models, optional on others), and printed whenever required. The result is similar to the Watermark feature, but with the ability to be much more elaborate.

Overlays can be useful for tasks such as printing letterheads, forms, or invoices, and should reduce the need for pre-printed stationery.

# An example of using Overlays:

Suppose that you have created and stored three files in the printer using the Storage Device Manager:

- the company logo.
- the company address.
- the company mission statement.

The Overlay feature allows these files to be incorporated into your document in various combinations, depending on your requirements.

# To create overlays:

- In your application, create the document that you wish to use for Overlay printing (e.g. a letterhead) and generate a PRN file (print file) using the printer driver.
- Use the Storage Device Manager utility to convert this PRN file (print file) to a storable file format, and download it to the printer.

Once someone has set up all the necessary overlay files on the printer, other users only have to switch on the required settings in the printer driver to use the overlays.

#### NOTE

- The internal hard disk must be installed in the printer to allow for spooling of the print job before final printing.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, DISK FULL is displayed and only one copy printed.
- If the software application being used has a collate print option, this must be turned OFF for overlay to operate correctly.
- An overlay may consist of more than one component file.

# Creating documents to use as overlays

An overlay can be created in any software application that can handle logos, letterheads, forms, etc. and can print to a file.

#### **PCL Driver**

To create a print (PRN) file:

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- 2. Ensure that the "Print To File" option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click Properties... This should open the printer driver settings.

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PCL driver to do this.

**4.** Choose all of the printer driver settings with which you would like your overlay to print.

- Try to keep the overlay to a single sheet. Don't use N-up, duplex, finisher options, etc. when creating an overlay. These can be added when printing the document that includes the overlay.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- Print the document.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

## **PostScript**

- 1. With the file to be stored as an overlay open in your application program, choose File then Print.
- Ensure that the Print To File option is switched on in your application's Print dialog box.
- **3.** Depending on the application, you may need to select your OKI printer model, and then click **Properties...** This should open the printer driver settings.
- **4.** Select the **Job Options** tab, and click the **Overlays...** button.
- 5. Choose Create Form from the menu.
- **6.** Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog box.
- 7. Click **OK** to print the document to a file.

Instead of sending the print job to the printer, this prompts you to save the print job on your PC's hard disk. Give the file a meaningful name such as "my template.prn".

# **Important**

Please ensure that you are using the Oki PostScript driver to do this.

# Downloading the print file to use as an overlay

In the previous topic, you created a print (PRN) file on your PC's hard disk. This topic explains how download this file to the printer using the Storage Device Manager.

The Storage Device Manager software is included with the original software CDs that were supplied with your printer.

- 1. Launch Storage Device Manager and allow the program to discover (locate) the printer.
- 2. Click Project then New Project.
- Select Add File to Project from the Project menu, and select the PRN file(s) that you created earlier.

**PCL:** This automatically generates a BIN file.

# **Important!**

At this step, you will see in the project window that the BIN file is assigned an ID number. You can change this ID number by double-clicking it, and entering a new one in the ID field.

**PostScript**: This automatically generates a PostScript hst file. Note the name that the file is assigned in the Storage Device Manager. *Names are case sensitive.* 

#### NOTE

For PCL and PS: this is important because you need to use this ID number or name when creating overlays in the printer driver. Therefore, it is recommended you change the ID number or name from the default value and *note it for later use*.

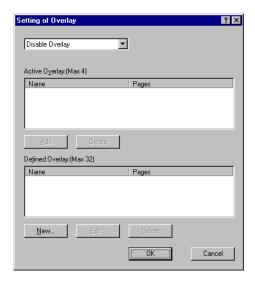
- **4.** Make sure the printer being used is highlighted in the lower window of the Storage Device Manager.
- Select the Project menu and then choose Send Project Files to Printer.

This downloads the file to the printer. The Storage Device Manager displays "Command Issued" to indicate that the file was downloaded successfully.

6. Close the Storage Device Manager.

# **Defining Overlays: PostScript**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the printer name and click Document Defaults.
- 3. On the Job Options tab, click the Overlay button.



4. Click the New button.

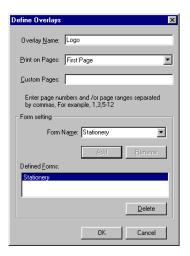


**5.** Enter the file name of the overlay in the **Overlay Name** list, and select the pages on which it is to be printed.

## **NOTE**

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printers' hard disk drive. It is case sensitive.

**6.** Enter or select a form name in the drop-down list under **Form setting**, then click **Add**.

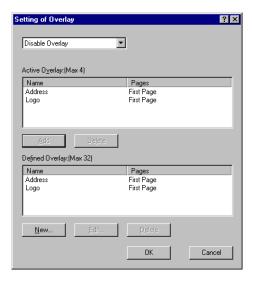


## **NOTE**

The Form Name is a random name of your selection.

- 7. Click OK.
- **8.** If required, continue to add files to the overlay by repeating steps 4 through 7.

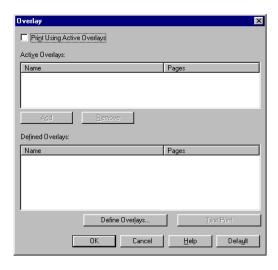
9. Highlight the overlay name(s) under Defined Overlay and click Add to add the overlay(s) to the list under Active Overlay (to select more than one overlay, hold the CTRL key while clicking on each name).



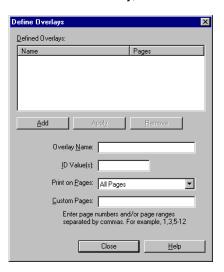
- **10.** Select **Use Overlay** from the drop-down list at the top of the dialog box, then click **OK**.
- 11. Click OK to close the Default dialog box.

## **Defining Overlays: PCL**

- 1. Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- 2. Highlight the printer name and click Document Defaults.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab.
- 4. Click the Overlay... button.



5. To define an overlay, click the **Define Overlays** button.



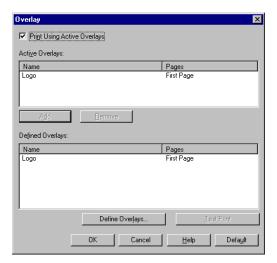
**6.** Enter the file name of the overlay in the **Overlay Name** box.

#### NOTE

The Overlay Name must be *EXACTLY* the same as the file name you made a noted of in the previous section. This is the name under which the file is stored on the printer's hard disk drive. It is *case sensitive*.

- Enter the ID of the file in ID Values. Please refer to the instructions for the Storage Device Manager utility.
- Select which pages the overlay is to be printed on from Print on Pages or use Custom Pages to select specific page numbers in the document, then click Add
- 9. Click Close.
- 10. Repeat steps 5 though 9 for each overlay you wish to add.
- Highlight the overlay name under Defined Overlay and click the Add button to add the overlay to the list in Active Overlays.

## 12. Select Print Using Active Overlays.

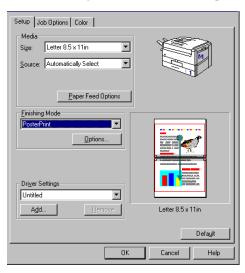


- 13. Click OK.
- 14. Click OK to close the Default dialog box.

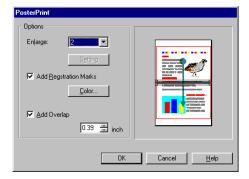
#### PRINTING POSTERS: PCL DRIVER ONLY

This option allows you to configure and print posters by breaking up the document page into multiple pieces which print enlarged on separate sheets. Then the separate sheets are combined to produce a poster. It is only available with the PCL printer driver

- **1.** Open the file in your application and select File  $\rightarrow$  Print.
- 2. In the Print dialog box, select the PCL driver, then click **Properties** (or **Setup**, or your application's equivalent).
- 3. On the Setup tab, under Finishing Mode, select Poster Print.



4. Click the Options... button and enter the configuration details



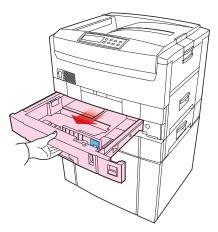
**5.** Click **OK** twice and print the document.

## **Maintenance**

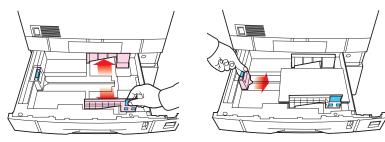
#### **ADDING PAPER**

The LCD display indicates when the number of sheets of paper in any paper tray falls below 30.

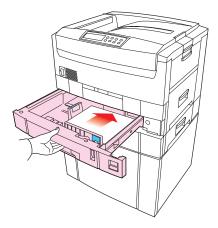
1. Pull out the paper tray.



- 2. Remove any remaining sheets of paper.
- **3.** Refill the tray with up to a ream (500 sheets) of paper, then place the sheets removed in Step 2 on top (this ensures that the oldest paper is used first, to help prevent paper jams).
- **4.** Check that the paper guides and rear stopper are correct for the size of paper being used.



#### 5. Close the paper tray gently.



## **Important!**

To prevent paper jams:

- Don't leave space between the paper and the paper guides and rear stopper.
- Don't overfill the paper tray. Capacity depends on the type of paper and the paper weight (max. 550 sheets of 20-lb. US Bond—75 g/m²—paper).
- Don't load damaged paper.
- Don't load paper of different sizes, paper quality or thickness at the same time.
- Don't remove the paper tray during printing.

#### NOTE

If installed, a lower paper tray cannot be used to print if there is no paper tray inserted above it.

#### CHANGING THE TONER CARTRIDGE

When the toner is running low, \*\*\* **TONER LOW** is displayed in the control panel (\*\*\* is the color name). If printing continues without replacing the toner cartridge, **CHANGE** \*\*\* **TONER** is displayed and printing is cancelled.

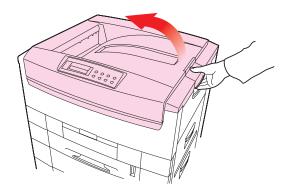
Depending on the operating environment, print may become faint before this message is displayed. If this happens, remove the toner cartridge and check whether it is empty; if so, the toner cartridge needs to be replaced.

Cartridge life is approximately 15,000 letter-size pages at 5% print density. The first toner cartridge installed in a new image drum needs to be replaced after less than this amount because the toner cartridge has to fill a new image drum.

#### **WARNING!**

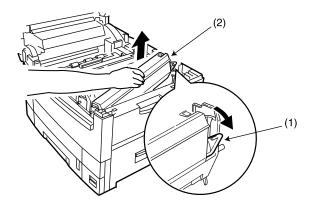
Take extreme care when handling toner.

- Toner can be harmful if inhaled, swallowed or if it gets in the eyes.
- Toner can also stain hands and clothing.
- 1. Switch off the printer and open the top cover.



2. Check the color label of the toner cartridge to be changed.

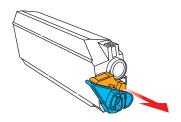
3. Move the lever (1) on the end of the toner cartridge in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go, then remove the toner cartridge (2), lifting the lever end of the cartridge first to disengage the locating peg on the image drum from the toner cartridge.



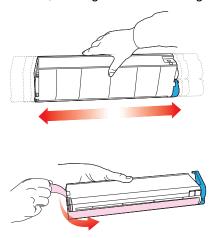
#### **CAUTION!**

Dispose of the toner cartridge in accordance with local legislation.

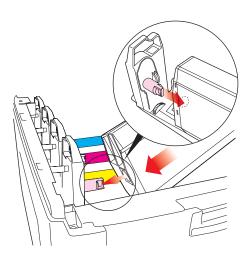
**4.** Unpack the new toner cartridge and remove the orange shipping clip.



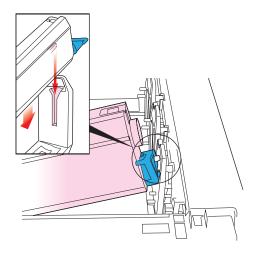
**5.** Shake the new toner cartridge back and forth several times. Then, holding the toner cartridge horizontally, remove the tape.



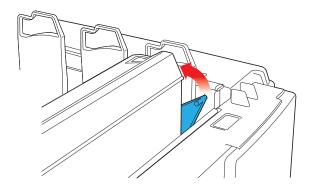
**6.** Insert the new toner cartridge into the image drum, left side first, engaging the drum locating peg in the hole in the toner cartridge.



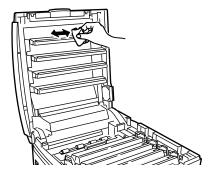
**7.** Gently push the toner cartridge down engaging the locking pin into the groove on the image drum.



**8.** Gently push the lever in the direction of the arrow until it stops. If you meet any resistance when pushing the lever, STOP and push down on the cartridge to be sure it is firmly in place, then proceed. This releases the toner into the image drum.



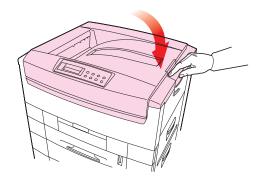
**9.** *Gently* wipe the corresponding LED head surface with the LED lens cleaner supplied with the toner cartridge.



## **CAUTION!**

Do not use methyl alcohol or other solvents on the LED head otherwise damage to the lens surface will occur.

## 10. Close the top cover.



#### NOTE

After installing the new toner cartridge, the message on the display TONER LOW or CHANGE TONER should disappear. However, this sometimes does not disappear until printing has been carried out. If it still does not disappear, reinstall the toner cartridge.

#### CHANGING THE IMAGE DRUM

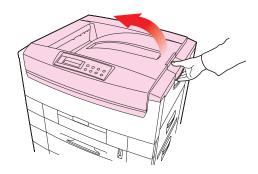
When the image drum reaches the end of its product life, \*\*\* CHANGE DRUM is displayed in the control panel (\*\*\* is the color name). If printing continues without replacing the image drum, CHANGE \*\*\* IMAGE DRUM is displayed and printing is cancelled.

Change the toner cartridge and clean the LED head at the same time as changing the image drum.

Image drum life is approximately 23,000 sheets of letter-size media. This assumes a typical office environment where 20% of print jobs are one page emails, 30% are 3-page documents containing only words (no graphics) and 50% are print runs of 15 pages or more.

#### **CAUTION!**

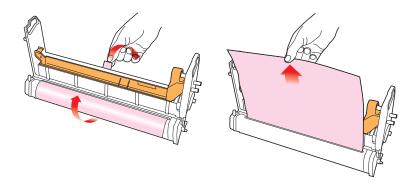
- Never expose the image drum to light for more than 5 minutes.
- Never expose the image drum to direct sunlight.
- Never touch the surface of the green drum inside the image drum unit.
- 1. Switch off the printer and open the top cover.



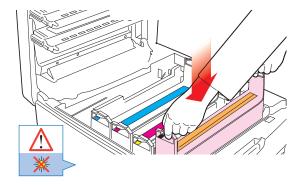
**2.** Remove the appropriate image drum/toner cartridge from the printer.



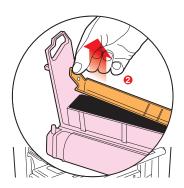
- 3. Remove the new image drum from the packaging.
- **4.** Remove the protective sheet and film from the new image drum.



5. Install the new image drum in the printer.



**6.** Push the tab inwards and remove the blanking plate (2) from the image drum.



7. Install a new toner cartridge of the corresponding color: see "Changing the toner cartridge" on page 405.

#### **WARNING!**

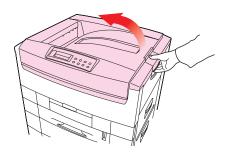
Take extreme care when handling toner.

- Toner can be harmful if inhaled, swallowed or if it gets in the eyes.
- Toner can also stain hands and clothing.
- 8. Close the top cover.

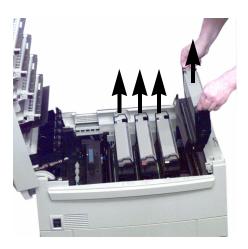
#### **CHANGING THE TRANSFER BELT**

When the transfer belt reaches the end of its life, **CHANGE BELT UNIT** is displayed in the control panel. The transfer belt life is approximately 80,000 sheets, letter long edge feed. However, this assumes a standard print job of three sheets. If single sheets are printed, transfer belt life is reduced.

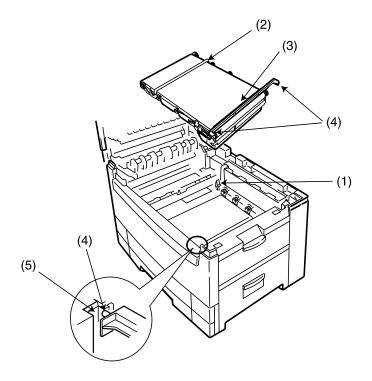
1. Switch off the printer and open the top cover.



2. Remove all four image drums/toner cartridges from the printer and place them on a *flat* surface (to prevent damage to the shiny green drum surface), then *cover them to protect them from light* while you are replacing the transfer belt.



**3.** Press back the lock lever (1) and, using the handles (2 and 3), remove the old transfer belt from the printer.

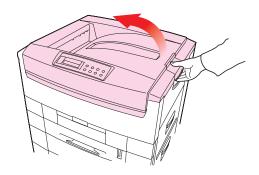


- 4. Remove the new transfer belt unit from its packaging.
- **5.** Using the handles (2 and 3), align the pins (4) with the grooves (5) on the printer and insert the new transfer belt in the printer.
- **6.** Move the lock lever (1) forward and lock the transfer belt into place.
- **7.** Reinstall the four image drums and toner cartridges in the printer.
- 8. Close the top cover.

#### **CHANGING THE FUSER UNIT**

When the fuser unit reaches the end of its product life, **CHANGE FUSER UNIT** is displayed in the control panel. Fuser unit life is approximately 80,000 letter-size sheets.

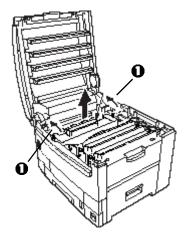
1. Switch off the printer and open the top cover.



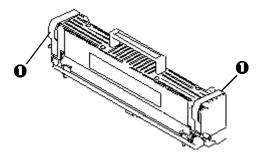
#### **WARNING!**

The fuser unit is very hot after printing. Always use the handle when lifting it.

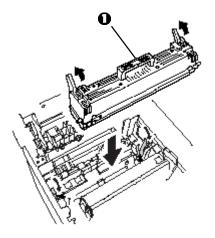
2. Move the two locking levers (1) to the rear of the machine to release the fuser unit, then use the handle to remove the fuser from the printer.



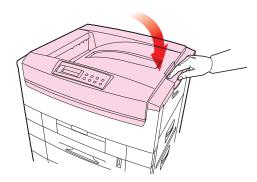
Remove the new fuser unit from its packaging and lift off the shipping tape (1) holding the levers at either end of the fuser. As you remove the tape, the levers should move into the locked position.



**4.** Using the handle (1), lower the new fuser unit into the printer and push down firmly to lock it in place.



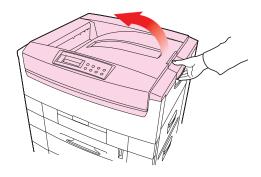
- **5.** Make sure the two spring loaded locking levers lock the fuser unit into place.
- 6. Close the top cover.



#### **CLEANING THE LED HEADS**

Clean the LED heads when

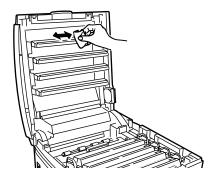
- · printing is unclear
- · printing has white lines
- · when text is blurred
- 1. Switch off the printer and open the top cover.



#### **CAUTION!**

Do not use methyl alcohol or other solvents on the LED head: these will damage the lens surface.

2. Gently wipe each LED head surface with the LED lens cleaner or a soft tissue.



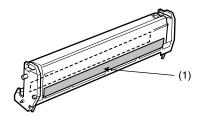
3. Close the top cover.

#### TRANSPORTING THE PRINTER

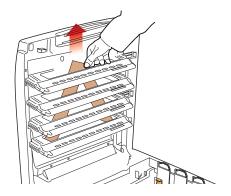
This printer is a precision machine. If it is transported without its protective packaging it may be prone to mechanical damage.

To prepare the printer for transportation:

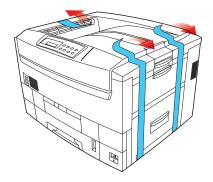
- **1.** Turn off the printer.
- 2. Disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable from the printer and remove any paper from the paper trays.
- 3. Open the top cover and remove the four image drums.
- 4. Seal the aperture on each image drum and its toner cartridge with plastic adhesive tape (1) to prevent any toner spillage during transportation.



- **5.** Place the four image drums complete with their toner cartridges back into the printer.
- Place the LED packing array strips behind the LED heads and close the cover.



7. Secure the cover with packing tape.

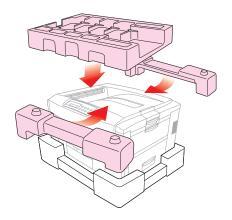


#### **WARNING!**

The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg) without the duplex unit; 172 lbs. (78 kg) with the duplex unit installed (dxn models).

Three (3) people are required to lift the printer safely.

**8.** Place the bottom styrofoam packing piece on the skid and lower printer onto it. Then place the remaining styrofoam packing pieces around the printer.



**9.** Place the box over the printer on the skid and secure it in place with the handle locks.

# **Troubleshooting**

## **LCD MESSAGES**

The liquid crystal display (LCD) on the control panel indicates the printer status and if there is a problem with the printer. Status and error messages are listed below together with an explanation of what each message means:

LCD Message	Meaning
***** DRUM NEAR LIFE	An image drum is nearing the end of its life. (***** indicates color)
**** EMPTY	Warning that Tray ***** is empty. MP Tray is Tray 0.
***** NEAR END	The paper in the selected ***** is nearly finished. (***** indicates paper tray).
***** TONER LOW	Toner is low (***** indicates color).
***** TONER SENSOR ERROR	Error with the toner sensor (***** indicates color). Call for service.
BELT UNIT MISSING	Transfer belt unit is missing.
CANCELLING JOB	Cancelling the current job.
CENTRO I/F ERROR	Centronics interface error (parallel interface).
CHANGE ***** IMAGE DRUM	Change the image drum (***** indicates color).
CHANGE BELT UNIT	Change the transfer belt.
CHANGE FUSER UNIT	Change the fuser unit.
CHANGE PAPER TO *****	Paper must be changed to correct paper size and/or media type (***** indicates size or media type).
CHECK *****	Check Tray ***** for paper jam. MP tray is Tray 0.
CHECK BELT UNIT	Check the transfer belt for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
CHECK DUPLEX	Check the duplex unit for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
CHECK FUSER UNIT	Check the fuser unit for paper jam, correct installation, etc.
CHECK IMAGE DRUM	Check the image drum for correct installation, etc. Color will be indicated.
COLLATE FAIL	Collating of multiple copies has failed.
COLOR ADJUSTING	Adjusting head so that colors do not shift on to each other.
COLOR BALANCE ADJUST	Adjust the color balance.

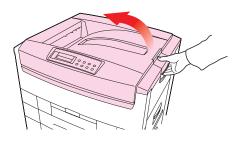
LCD Message	Meaning
COMMUNICATION ERROR	There is an error with communications to computer.
DATA ARRIVE	Data has been received but processing has not started yet.
DATA PRESENT	Un-printed data remains in buffer. Waiting for data to follow.
DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED	Error with hard disk operations.
DISK FILESYSTEM IS FULL	Hard disk/flash memory full.
DISK FULL	The internal hard drive is full.
EEPROM INITIALIZE ERROR	Call for service.
EMPTY	Indicates which paper tray is empty.
ERROR POSTSCRIPT	A PostScript error has occurred.
FATAL ERROR	Call for service.
FUSER UNIT MISSING	Fuser unit is missing.
INSTALL ADDITIONAL MEMORY	Additional memory is required before job can be printed.
INSTALL NEW IMAGE DRUM	Install a new image drum. Color will be indicated.
INSTALL NEW TONER	Install a new toner cartridge. Color will be indicated.
INSTALL PAPER CASSETTE	Install the paper cassette. Paper tray will be indicated.
INVALID DATA	Data is incorrect.
LOAD	Load correct paper size/type. Size/type will be indicated.
MEDIA MISMATCH	Paper type set via menu does not match that sent via driver.
NETWORK ERROR	Network error.
OFFLINE	Shows off line status.
ONLINE	Shows on line status.
OPEN UPPER COVER	Open the upper cover.
PAPER JAM	Indicates there is a paper jam.
PAPER SIZE ERROR	Indicates wrong paper size.
PLEASE POWER OFF	Printer must be switched off after disk/flash initialization.
POWER SAVE	The printer is in power save mode.
PRINTING	Data is being printed.
PROCESSING	Data is being processed.

LCD Message	Meaning
RAM CHECK	RAM is being checked after switching printer on.
REGISTRATION ADJUST TEST	Registration adjustment being tested.
REGISTRATION ERROR	An error has occurred setting up the registration.
REMOVE THE PAPER	Indicates wrong paper being used.
RS232C FRAMING ERROR	Serial framing error. Check configuration of serial card.
RS232C OVERFLOW ERROR	Serial overflow error. Check configuration of serial card.
RS232C OVERRUN ERROR	Serial overrun error. Check configuration of serial card.
RS232C PARITY ERROR	Serial parity error. Check configuration of serial card.
SERVICE CALL	A serious error has occurred. Call for service.
SHUTDOWN	Starts the shutdown procedure to protect the file system on hard disk.
SIZE MISMATCH	Change paper to correct size/type. Press On-line to continue.
STACKER FULL	Stacker is full. Remove the paper.
UNSUITABLE SIZE	Indicates wrong paper size.
USB I/F ERROR	USB interface error has occurred.
WARMING UP	The printer is warming up.

#### **PAPER JAMS**

Paper jams are indicated by an error message on the display. Paper jams are cleared as follows:

1. Open the top cover of the printer.

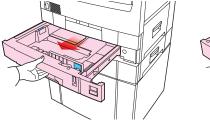


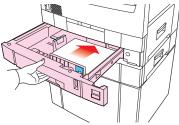
#### **NOTE**

Do not close the top cover *completely* (until it latches) during this process. If the top cover is closed too soon, the paper jam error will not be cleared.

To minimize possible damage to the drums due to exposure to light, lower the top cover when appropriate, but do not press down to latch it.

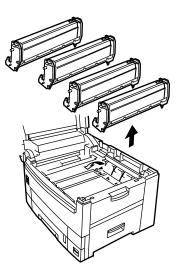
Check the paper tray: Pull out the paper tray and remove any jammed paper from the printer, then gently push the paper tray back in.





## 3. Check the transfer belt and right side cover

**a.** Remove all four image drums and place them on a flat surface away from light.

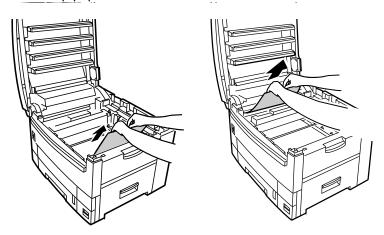


#### **CAUTION!**

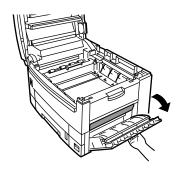
## To avoid damage to the drums:

- Be careful to place the drums on a flat surface so that nothing contacts the shiny green surface in the bottom of the drum.
- · Keep the image drums away from light.

**b.** Carefully remove any jammed paper from the transfer belt and top paper exit.

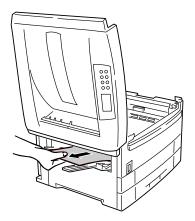


**c.** Open the right side cover and remove any jammed paper, then close the right side cover.



**d.** Put all four image drums back into the printer.

**4. Check the straight-through exit paper tray**: remove any jammed paper from the side exit tray (if necessary, open the tray and remove any jammed paper, then close it).

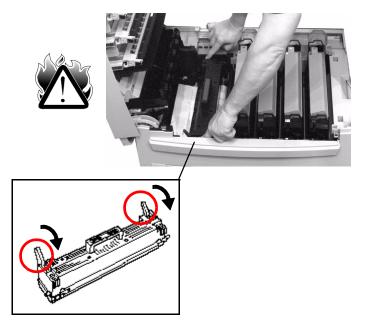


## 5. Check the fuser unit:

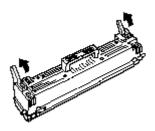
## **WARNING!**

The fuser unit is very hot after printing. Always use the handle when lifting it.

**a.** Release the fuser roller lock levers at either end of the fuser and slowly remove the jammed paper.

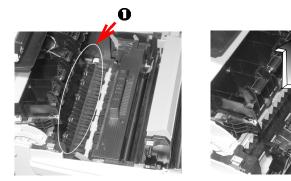


b. Relock the levers at either end of the fuser.

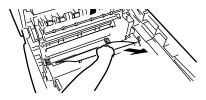


## 6. Check the paper separator:

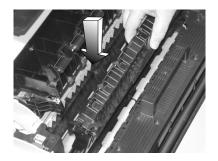
a. Release and lift the separator (1).



**b.** Remove any jammed paper from the printer.

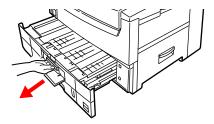


c. Replace the separator.

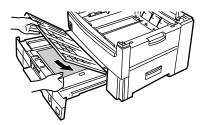


#### 7. Check the duplex unit.

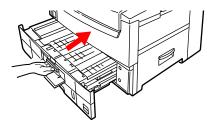
**a.** Open the small front cover and pull on the blue handle to slide the duplex unit and paper tray out.



**b.** Lift the duplex top cover and remove any jammed paper.

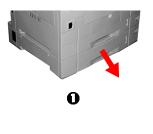


**c.** Close the duplex top cover and slide the duplex unit/paper tray back into the printer.



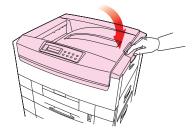
d. Close the small front cover.

8. Check any additional paper trays: if any additional paper trays (1) or the high capacity feeder (2) are installed, pull out the paper trays and check that no paper is jammed along the various parts of the exit path.





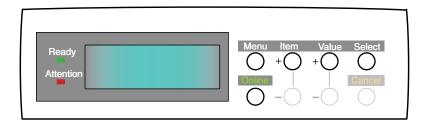
9. Close the top cover, pressing down to latch it in place.



#### PARALLEL TRANSMISSION MODE

The parallel port supports IEEE-1284 and ECP mode. If your computer's parallel port is not compatible with one of these modes, the printer may not print at all or it may print corrupted data.

To correct for this, enter the printer's Parallel Menu and change the ECP setting to Disable.



- Press the MENU button until PARALLEL MENU is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- 2. Press the ITEM button until ECP is displayed.
- 3. Press the VALUE button to change the display to DISABLE.
- Press the SELECT button.
   An asterisk (\*) appears to the right of the selected setting.
- **5.** Press the ONLINE button to return the printer to online status.

#### **PROBLEM SOLVING**

## Paper feed problems

Paper jams are frequent.

- More than one sheet feeds at a time.
- Paper curls.
- Paper feeds at an angle.

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer is not horizontal.	Place the printer on a stable, level surface.
The paper is too thin.	Use the correct type of paper (see Specifications).
The paper is moist or affected by static.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.
The paper is creased or wrinkled.	Remove the creased/wrinkled paper from the feed tray.
The paper is not aligned correctly.	Adjust tray or manual feed guides.
Paper doesn't feed.	Correct paper feed selection in the printer driver.

## Paper jam has been cleared, but printer does not print.

Possible cause	Remedy
The top cover has not remained open until all paper jams have been cleared.	Removing a paper jam is not sufficient: Raise and <i>gently</i> lower the top cover, especially if the paper jam has been removed from behind the front cover.

## PROBLEMS PRINTING FROM WINDOWS

## **Cannot configure for parallel connection.**

Possible cause	Remedy
The computer does not support bi-directional parallel interface.	There is no fix for this problem. You should only use a computer that does support a bi-directional parallel interface.
Parallel cable does not meet specifications.	Use a bi-directional parallel cable to IEEE 1284–1994 standard.
The interface is disabled.	Check that the parallel interface is set to enable.
Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.	Configure again from the beginning.
Parallel cable is disconnected or faulty.	Reconnect or try another cable.
A converter, buffer or extension cable is being used.	Test by connecting printer and computer directly.

## **Cannot configure for USB connection.**

#### **NOTES**

- Windows 95 does not support USB.
- Windows 98 upgraded from Windows 95 may not support USB.
- Windows 98 original installation and Windows Me, 2000, NT and XP all support USB.
- The printer cannot be used with a USB hub.

Possible cause	Remedy
Computer does not support USB interface.	Check if there is a USB controller in the Windows device manager.
USB cable does not meet specifications.	Use USB cable to specification Ver.1.1.
Interface is disabled.	Check that USB interface is set to Enable.
Configuration procedure was not correctly followed or cancelled.	Configure again from the beginning.
USB cable is disconnected or faulty.	Reconnect or try another cable.
A USB hub is being used.	The printer cannot be used with a USB hub. Connect the printer and computer directly.

## Printout is garbled or incorrect with parallel connection.

Possible cause	Remedy
Possible mismatch on	Change parallel transmission mode (see Parallel
parallel connection between	Transmission Mode above).
computer and printer.	

## **Cannot print.**

- LPT WRITE ERROR displayed.
- PRNUSBX WRITE ERROR is displayed.

Possible cause	Remedy
Interface is disabled.	In the printer menu settings, enable Parallel or USB interface.
Printer is switched OFF.	Switch ON.
Printer interface cable is disconnected.	Reconnect the printer interface cable.
A converter, buffer, extension cable or USB hub is being used.	Test by connecting printer and computer directly.
Printer driver output port is incorrect.	Set correct output port to which the printer interface cable is connected.
Printer is not selected in the printer driver.	Select the printer or set to default printer.
Incorrect printer driver is being used.	Delete this printer driver and install correct printer driver.

## Application error or general protection fault is displayed.

Possible cause	Remedy
Application is not suitable for Windows version.	Upgrade the application.
Memory is insufficient for number of applications running.	Close all other applications.
Print file is corrupted.	Correct or recreate the file.
Memory is insufficient for application.	Increase computer's memory.
Insufficient free space on hard disk.	Delete unnecessary files.
Printer driver is incorrectly configured.	Correctly configure printer driver.

## Printing is slow.

Possible cause	Remedy
Print processing is carried out by the computer.	Use a computer with a faster processor. Set lower print resolution in the printer driver
Data is too complex.	Simplify data.

## Printer requests paper size change to continue printing.

Possible cause	Remedy
Paper loaded in tray is different size from that formatted in software application.	Either change paper in tray to match size formatted in application and press ONLINE to continue, or continue printing on existing paper by pressing ONLINE.

## PROBLEMS WITH POOR QUALITY PRINTING

## **Longitudinal white stripes**

Possible cause	Remedy
LED head is dirty.	Clean LED head with lens cleaner or soft tissue.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.
Image drum damaged.	Change image drum.

## **Longitudinal fading**

Possible cause	Remedy
LED head is dirty.	Clean LED head with lens cleaner or soft tissue.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.
Paper is unsuitable for printer.	Use recommended paper.

## **Faint printing**

Possible cause	Remedy
The toner cartridge is incorrectly installed.	Reinstall the toner cartridge.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.
The paper is moist.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.
Paper is unsuitable for printer.	Use recommended paper.

## **Fading in patches**

Possible cause	Remedy
The paper is moist.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.

## **Longitudinal black stripes**

Possible cause	Remedy
Image drum is damaged.	Replace image drum.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.
Periodic black lateral lines or spots.	<ul> <li>If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 44 - 94 mm, the image drum (green tube) is damaged or dirty. If damaged, replace the image drum cartridge. If dirty, wipe the image drum gently with soft tissue. If this does not work, replace the image drum.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the lines or spots occur at intervals of approximately 113 mm, the fuser roller is damaged. Change the fuser unit.</li> </ul>
The image drum has been exposed to light.	Remove the image drum from the printer and store it in a dark place for several hours. If this does not work, replace the image drum.

## Faint shading on unprinted sections

Possible cause	Remedy
Paper has been affected by static electricity.	Store paper within specified temperature and humidity levels.
Paper is too thick.	Use recommended paper.
Toner is low.	Change toner cartridge.

## **Blurred letter edges**

Possible cause	Remedy
LED is dirty.	Clean LED with lens cleaner or soft tissue.
Cannot print desired color because toner is low.	Replace toner cartridge.
Black formation method does not match application.	Open the printer driver and set black formation to CMYK.

### **MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS**

## The power is on, but the printer does not go online.

Possible cause	Remedy
Bad connection	Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable. Reconnect power cable and switch the printer on. If this does not clear the fault, call for service.

## Print processing does not start.

Possible cause	Remedy
Printer error.	Check the control panel. If an error message is displayed, correct the problem.

## Print processing cancels.

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer interface cable is faulty.	Replace the printer interface cable.
The time out setting is too short.	Reset the time out to a higher value.

## Printer makes a strange noise.

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer is not horizontal.	Place the printer on a stable, level surface.
There are scraps of paper or other foreign matter inside the printer.	Check the inside of the printer and remove any such objects.
The top cover is not firmly shut.	Press the left and right sides of the top cover.

# An asterisk (\*) symbol appears on the display, repeatedly moving across the first line then the second.

Possible cause	Remedy
The main board is not properly seated in the printer.	Turn the printer off, then reseat the main board and turn the printer back on again.

## It takes a long time to start printing.

Possible cause	Remedy
The printer has to warm up returning from power save mode.	In the printer menu settings, set power save to a higher value to increase the length of time before entering power save mode.
The image drum carries out a cleaning process to ensure print quality, which takes time.	Wait until this process has been completed.
The fuser unit adjusts temperature, which takes time.	Wait until this process has been completed.
The printer is processing data from another interface.	Wait until this data is processed.

## **Accessories**

#### INTRODUCTION

Depending on the configuration of your printer, you may wish to add one or more of the following options as your needs evolve:

• Additional Memory: see page 444

• Hard Disk Drive (HDD): see page 448

Duplex Unit: see page 451Paper Trays: see page 456

• High Capacity Feeder (HCF): see page 460

• Finisher: see page 464

For all but the finisher, which is described in a separate manual, details of their physical installation are provided in this section.

#### **ADDITIONAL MEMORY**

Additional memory increases the printer's capacity to process complex data:

- Recommended for duplex printing or if error messages appear when printing complex data.
- Used for graphic-intensive applications on networks.

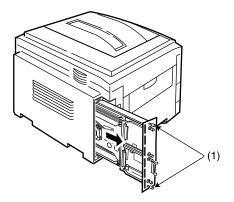
Additional memory is available in 64Mb, 128Mb, and 256Mb modules.

## **Installing additional memory**

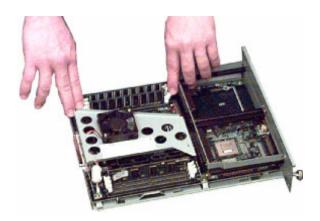
#### **NOTE**

If the maximum amount of memory is being installed in the printer (three 256 MB modules), the memory modules that were originally installed must be removed.

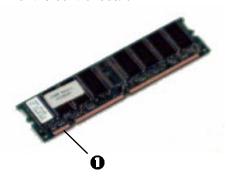
- **1.** Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.
- 2. Loosen the two screws (1) and remove the main board.



**3.** Insert the memory modules the slots as follows: push out the white tabs at either end of the socket.



**a.** Align the module with the narrow strip (1) on its metallic contact edge to the right (toward the slot identifier numbers) of the control board.



**b.** Carefully insert the module in the socket, placing the ends into the slot in the lock tabs. Press down firmly, until you

feel the board engage the connector, then make sure the white tabs come up to lock the module in place.



- 4. Replace the main board and secure it with the two screws.
- **5.** Reconnect the printer interface cable and power cable, then switch on the printer.

#### **NOTE**

If the error message SERVICE CALL/034 appears on the LCD after switching the printer on, *turn the printer off* and pull the main board back out and make sure the memory modules have been installed correctly.

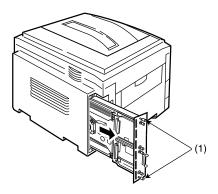
- 6. Print a MenuMap (see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44) and check that the Total Memory Size shown at the top of the MenuMap matches the memory now installed in the printer. If it doesn't, turn the printer off and pull out the main board and check to be sure that the modules are all firmly seated in their connectors.
- 7. In the printer driver(s), change the installed memory to match the new value:
  - For Windows XP: see page 91
  - For Windows 2000: see page 172
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 253
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 323

#### **INTERNAL HARD DISK DRIVE**

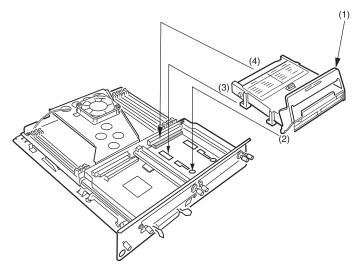
The optional internal hard disk is used to store documents for proof and print, password or secure printing.

### Installing the hard disk drive

- **1.** Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.
- 2. Loosen the two screws (1) and remove the main board.



3. Hold the hard disk drive by the locking handle (1), then insert the handle locating lugs (2) and four locating feet (3) into the holes in the main board making sure the hard disk connector (4) starts to engage with the socket on the control board.



- **4.** Gently push down on the locking handle (1) making sure the hard disk moves forward and fully engages with the socket.
- 5. Replace the main board and secure it with the two screws.
- **6.** Connect the printer interface cable and power cable, then switch on the printer.
- 7. Print a MenuMap (see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44) and check that the HDD appears at the top of the MenuMap. If it doesn't, pull the main board back out and reseat the HDD.

The printer will automatically configure to include this option. However, you can also set the menu manually as follows:

- 1. Press the MENU button until **DISK MAINTENANCE** is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- **2.** When **HDD INITIALIZE** is displayed, press the SELECT button.
- 3. Press the ITEM button to shut down the printer.
- **4.** Switch the printer on again (The printer has to be switched off and back on again to initialize the hard disk before use).

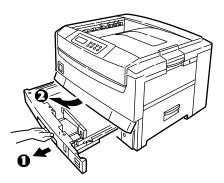
#### **NOTE**

- When initializing the hard disk, any fonts, overlays or print jobs that have been acknowledged will be erased.
- The Storage Device Manager can also be used to initialize the hard disk after installation. Please refer to the User Guide for the Storage Device Manager.
  - 5. In the printer driver(s), change the settings to include the new hard disk drive:
    - For Windows XP: see page 92
    - For Windows 2000: see page 174
    - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 255
    - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 325

#### **DUPLEX UNIT**

#### Installation

- 1. Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable.
- 2. Remove the paper tray (1): slide it out until it reaches its stop, then lift up to remove the tray completely from the printer.

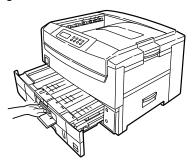


3. Remove the front cover (2) by lifting it at both ends.

#### **NOTE**

Do not discard the front cover. If the duplex unit is removed, the front cover has to be reinstalled.

4. Place the duplex unit on top of the paper tray so that they are aligned flush, then open the small cover on the duplex unit and pull the blue handle gently until the duplex unit and paper tray are locked together.



- **5.** Slide the duplex unit and paper tray as a complete unit back into the printer.
- 6. Connect the power cable and switch the printer on.

#### NOTE

The printer menu will automatically configure to include this option. However, you can also set it manually as follows:

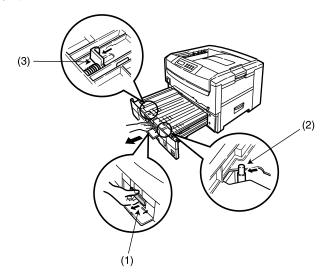
- Press the MENU button until PRINT MENU is displayed, then press the SELECT button.
- Press the ITEM button until DUPLEX is displayed.
- Press the VALUE button until ON is displayed then press the SELECT button. An asterisk (\*) appears to show that duplex has been set to on.
- Press the ONLINE button to turn the printer back on line.

- 7. In the printer driver(s), change the settings to include the new duplex unit:
  - For Windows XP: see page 96
  - For Windows 2000: see page 178
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 257
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 329

#### Removing the duplex unit

The duplex unit may be removed from the printer as follows.

- 1. Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable.
- Open the small front cover and pull the colored handle (1) to slide the duplex unit/paper tray out of the printer as a complete unit.



- **3.** Slightly lift up the duplex unit/paper tray together and remove completely from the printer.
- **4.** Pull the post (2) forward and pull the two stoppers (3) forward to release the duplex unit from the paper tray, then remove the duplex unit from the paper tray.
- 5. Reattach the original front cover, then reinstall the paper tray.
- **6.** Connect the power cable and switch the printer on.
- 7. Change the DUPLEX setting in the menu to OFF: to do this, follow the steps in the NOTE on page 452 in reverse.

- **8.** Press the ONLINE button to turn the printer back to online status.
- 9. Disengage the duplex option setting in the printer driver:
  - For Windows XP: see page 96
  - For Windows 2000: see page 178
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 257
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 329

#### **ADDITIONAL PAPER TRAYS**

Two additional paper trays can be installed and, when combined with the standard paper tray, paper capacity increases to approximately 1650 sheets.

#### Installation

1. Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.

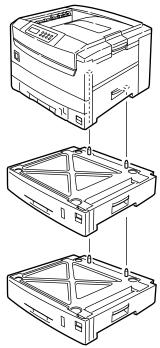
#### WARNING!

The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg) without the duplex unit; 172 lbs. (78 kg) with the duplex unit installed (dxn models). Three (3) people are required to lift the printer safely.

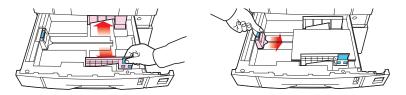
### **NOTE**

If installing both additional paper trays, put the two additional paper trays together as one unit first, then install the printer on top of the two additional paper trays.

2. Lower the printer *gently* on to the additional paper tray unit aligning the holes and connection socket on the base of the printer with the locating pegs and connector on the additional paper tray unit.



**3.** Load paper in each tray, using the same procedure you use for loading paper in Tray 1.



**4.** Fold the tray media size identifier sheet to expose the appropriate media size, then insert it in the holder at the right end of the tray.



**5.** Place the appropriate self-adhesive tray number identifier label (2 or 3) supplied with the optional tray on the lower rectangle at the right side of the tray.



**6.** Connect the printer interface cable and power cable, then switch on the printer.

- 7. Print a MenuMap (see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44) and check that the newly added tray(s) now appear under the MEDIA MENU as Tray2, Tray3.
- **8.** In the printer driver(s, change the settings to include the new trays:
  - For Windows XP: see page 94
  - For Windows 2000: see page 176
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 256
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 327

## **HIGH CAPACITY FEEDER (HCF)**

The high capacity feeder consists of three paper trays together as one unit, mounted on casters. Each tray holds approximately 550 sheets, depending on paper weight, increasing the total printer capacity to about 2200 sheets. This high capacity feeder can be combined with *one* additional paper tray to give a maximum printer capacity of 2750 sheets.

#### NOTE

The high capacity feeder *cannot* be used with more than one additional paper trays.

### Installing the high capacity feeder

1. Switch off the printer and disconnect the power cable and printer interface cable.

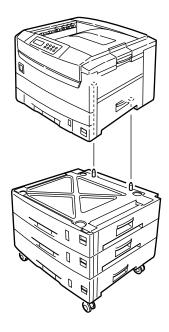
#### WARNING!

The printer weighs 160 lbs. (72 kg) without the duplex unit; 172 lbs. (78 kg) with the duplex unit installed (dxn models). Three (3) people are required to lift the printer safely.

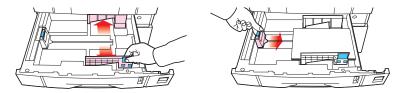
#### **NOTE**

If installing the high capacity feeder and one additional paper tray, put the high capacity feeder and additional paper tray together as one unit first, then install the printer on top.

2. Lower the printer gently on to the high capacity feeder aligning the holes and connection socket on the base of the printer with the pins and connector plug on the high capacity feeder.



**3.** Load paper in each tray, using the same procedure you use for loading paper in Tray 1.



**4.** Fold the tray media size identifier sheets supplied with the High Capacity Feeder to expose the appropriate media size, then insert them in the holder at the right end of each tray.



**5.** Place the appropriate self-adhesive tray number identifier labels supplied with the High Capacity Feeder on the lower rectangle at the right side of each tray.



**6.** Connect the printer interface cable and power cable, then switch on the printer.

- 7. Print a MenuMap (see "Printing the MenuMap" on page 44) and check that the newly added trays (Tray2, 3 and 4 if only the HCF is installed, or Tray3, 4, and 5 if the optional tray is also installed) appear under the MEDIA MENU.
- **8.** In the printer driver(s), change the settings to include the newly added high capacity feeder trays:
  - For Windows XP: see page 98
  - For Windows 2000: see page 180
  - For Windows Me/98/95 (PostScript driver only): see page 258
  - For Windows NT 4.0: see page 331

#### **NOTE**

To engage the printer's Automatic Tray Switching feature:

- Press the MENU button until the PRINT MENU is displayed and press the SELECT button.
- Press the ITEM button until AUTO TRAY SWITCH is displayed.
- Press the VALUE button to change the setting to ON, then press SELECT.
- Press ONLINE to place the printer back online.

#### **FINISHER**

The Finisher allows you to staple, punch and offset the printed documents emerging from your printer.

The accessories available are:

- Finisher with 2 hole punching
- Finisher with 4 hole punching
- Finisher Interface Kit
- Finisher Stand

For full details, refer to the Finisher User's Guide.

## **Specifications**

**Print method** LED exposed light source electronic photographic

memory

Resolution ES 3037 - 600x1200 dpi

ES 3037e - 1200x1200 dpi

**Colors** Cyan, magenta, yellow, black (CMYK)

Processor speed

ES 3037: 450 MHz, ES 3037e: 600 MHz

Memory ES 3037 - 128 MB standard

Extra memory may be required with Duplex unit

ES 3037e - 320 MB standard

Up to 1 Gb max with optional memory modules

HDD Capacity - 10 MB

Emulations PostScript3, PCL5c

Epson FX and IBM ProPrinter dot matrix emulations

Operating platforms

Windows XP, 2000, Me, 98, 95, NT 4.0

MacOS 8.6 - 9.x, Mac OS X (10.1 and above), Classic

Internal fonts PostScript 3, PCL5c fonts

Time to Print

Start

First print time: 10 secs (black)
First print time: 11.5 secs (color)

Warm up time: 160 secs

Parallel Interface Designation: IEEE-1284

Connection: 36-pin, IEEE 1284-compliant

Required cable:Standard bi-directional IEEE-1284 compatible cable of up to 6 ft. (1.8 meters). Must comply with FCC regulations, must be shielded with twisted pair conductors, and must be UL and CSA approved.

Transmission modes: Compatible, Nibble, ECP

Interface level: low = +0.0 to 0.8V, high = +2.4 to 5.0V

Universal Serial Bus (USB)

Designation: USB specification Version 1.1

Connection: USB Type B

interface

Required cable: Shielded, USB specification Version 1.1

Transmission mode: Full speed (12 Mbps + 25% maximum) Power control: self powered device

Network 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T (option)

Print speed in Color. letter = 30 ppm, tabloid = 16 ppm

pages per *Monochrome*: letter = 37 ppm, tabloid = 20 ppm

minute (ppm)a Transparencies, color: letter = 10 ppm

Paper feed<sup>b</sup> Paper tray, manual feed, optional additional paper

tray(s), optional high capacity feeder

Media size -Letter, Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13 Trays 1 thru 5

Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive

A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, B4, B5

A6 (Tray 1 only)

Media size -MP tray

Letter, Legal-14, Legal-13.5, Legal-13, Tabloid, Tabloid Extra, Executive

A3, A3 Nobi, A3 Wide, A4, A5, B4, B5, A6

Envelopes: C5, DL, C4, Com-9, Com-10, Monarch

Custom (up to 1200mm length)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup> Print speed varies with paper size, media weight and paper feed.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>b</sup> Exit method is limited by paper size, media weight and paper feed.

Paper capacity Tray 1

530 sheets 20-lb.US Bond paper

250 transparencies

Optional Trays 2 and 3

530 sheets 20-lb. US Bond paper

Optional High Capacity Feeder

• Three trays, each 530 sheets 20-lb. US Bond paper

Multi-Purpose tray

• 100 sheets 20-lb US Bond

• 50 Transparencies

10 Envelopes

• 3/8-inch (1 cm) stack of labels

Multi-purpose tray: 17 to 54 lb. US Bond—up to 113 lb.

Index—(64 to 203 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

Duplex unit: 20 to 28-lb. US Bond (75 to 105 g/m²)

Paper exit capacity

500 sheets top (face down) exit (see Note) 100 sheets straight-through (face up) exit

**Print margin** 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) minimum outside the print margin

Print accuracy Start: ±2 m

Paper skew: ±1 mm per 100 mm

Image expansion/compression: ±1 mm per 100 mm

**Startup time** Less than 3 min. from powering up (25°C)

**Power supply** 120 (115-127) volts AC, 60 Hz  $\pm$  2 Hz

OR

230 (198-264) volts AC, 50 Hz ± 2 Hz

Power consumption

Operating: 1600 W max.; 800 W average Standby: 1300 W max.; 250 W average

## Operating environment

#### Operating:

- 50 to 90°F (10 to 32 °C)
- 20 to 80% RH

maximum wet bulb temperature 77°C (25°C)

For maximum print quality

- 62.6 to 80.6°F ( 17 to 27 °C)
- 50 to 70% RH

Off

- 32 to 110°F (0 to 43 °C)
- 10 to 90% RH

Storage

- -14 to 110°F (-10 to 43°C)
- 10 to 90 RH

**Duty cycle** Average: 16,600 sheets per month

Maximum: 83,000 sheets per month

Noise level Operating: 55 dBA

Standby: 45 dBA

Power save: 43 dBA

Product life 5 years or 1,000,000 sheets

**Dimensions** Width: 26.2 inches (666 mm)

Depth: 24.6 inches (626 mm) Height: 18.1 inches (460 mm)

Weight 160 lbs. (72 kg) not including optional accessories and

paper

# **Consumables**

# TONER TYPE C5



Description	Order No.
Black Toner	52114901
Cyan Toner	52114902
Magenta Toner	52114903
Yellow Toner	52114904

## DRUMS TYPE C5,



Description	Order No.
Black Image Drum	56117901
Cyan Image Drum	56117902
Magenta Image Drum	56117903
Yellow Image Drum	56117904

## **FUSER UNITS**



Description	Order No.
Fuser Unit, 120V	41946101
Fuser Unit, 230V	41946103

## **TRANSFER BELT**



Description	Order No.
Transfer belt	.41946001

## OKI® PRINT MEDIA

## **OKI Banner Paper**



Order No. White, 70-lb. Index, 35.4" x 12.9". 100 sheets........52206001

## OKI SynFlex™: Waterproof and Tear proof



White, 8½ x 11". 100 sheets	52205901
OKI Bright White Proofing Paper	
	Order No.
32-lb. US Bond, 81/2 x 11". 500 sheets	52206101
32-lb. US Bond, 11 x 17". 500 sheets	52206102
32-lb. US Bond, 12 x 18". 500 sheets	52206103

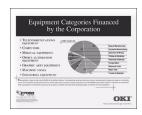
Order No.

## **OKI® PRINT MEDIA (CONTINUED)**

#### **OKI Premium Card Stock**

	Order No.
White, 60 lb. Cover, 81/2 x 11". 250 sheets	. 52205601
White, 90 lb. Index, 81/2 x 11". 250 sheets	. 52205602
White, 110 lb. Index, 8½ x 11". 250 sheets	. 52205603

## **OKI Premium Color Transparencies**



## OKI Premium Envelopes: Security Tint, Redi-Strip Seal



# **Factory Default Settings**

## **PRINT MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
COPIES	1
DUPLEX	OFF
BINDING	LONG EDGE
OUTPUT BIN	FACE DOWN
JOB OFFSET	ON
PAPER FEED	TRAY1
AUTO TRAY SWITCH	ON
TRAY SEQUENCE	DOWN
MP TRAY USAGE	FEED WHEN MISMATCHING
MEDIA CHECK	ENABLE
TRANSPARENCY DETECT	AUTO
RESOLUTION ES 3037 ES 3037e	600 X 1299 DPI 1200 DPI
TONER SAVE MODE	OFF
MONO-PRINT SPEED	AUTO
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT
LINE PER PAGE	60
EDIT SIZE	CASSETTE SIZE

## **MEDIA MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
TRAY1 MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
TRAY1 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY2 MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
TRAY2 MEIDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY3 MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
TRAY3 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY4 MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
TRAY4 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
TRAY5 MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
TRAY5 MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
MP TRAY MEDIASIZE	LETTER LONG EDGE
MP TRAY MEDIATYPE	PLAIN
MP TRAY MEDIAWEIGHT	AUTO
UNIT OF MEASURE	INCHES
X DIMENSION	8.5 INCHES
Y DIMENSION	11 INCHES

## **COLOR MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
AUTO DENSITY MODE	AUTO
ADJUST DENSITY	[EXECUTE]
COLOR TUNING	[PRINT PATTERN]
CYAN HIGH-LIGHT	0
CYAN MID-TONE	0
CAN DARK	0
MAGENTA HIGH-LIGHT	0
MAGENTA MID-TONE	0
MAGENTA DARK	0
YELLOW HIGH-LIGHT	0
YELLOW MID-TONE	0
YELLOW DARK	0
BLACK HIGH-LIGHT	0
BLACK MID-TONE	0
BLACK DARK	0
CYAN DARKNESS	0
MAGENTA DARKNESS	0
YELLOW DARKNESS	0
BLACK DARKNESS	0
ADJUST REGISTRATION	[EXECUTE]
CYAN REG FINE ADJUST	0
MAGENTA REG FINE ADJUST	0
YELLOW REG FINE ADJUST	0
INK SIMULATION	OFF
UCR	LOW
CMY100% density	DISABLE

## **SYSTEM CONFIG MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
POWER SAVE DELAY TIME	60 MIN
PERSONALITY	AUTO EMULATION
USB PS-PROTOCOL	RAW
NETWORK PS PROTOCOL	RAW
CLEARABLE WARNING	ON
AUTO CONTINUE	OFF
MANUAL TIMEOUT	60 SEC.
WAIT TIMEOUT	40 SEC.
LOW TONER	CONTINUE
JAM RECOVERY	ON
ERROR REPORT	OFF
LANGUAGE	ENGLISH

## **PCL EMULATION MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
FONT SOURCE	RESIDENT
FONT No.	1000
FONT PITCH	10.00 CPI
FONT HEIGHT	12.00 POINT
SYMBOL SET	PC-8
A4 PRINT WIDTH	78 COLUMN
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LF FUNCTION	LF
PRINT MARGIN	NORMAL
TRUE BLACK	OFF
PEN WIDTH ADJUST	ON

## **PPR EMULATION MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
CHARACTER PITCH	10 CPI
FONT CONDENSE	10 CPI to 12 CPI
CHARACTER SET	SET 2
SYMBOL SET	IBM-437
LETTER 0 STYLE	DISABLE
ZERO CHARACTER	NORMAL
LINE PITCH	6 LPI
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LF FUNCTION	LF
LINE LENGTH	80 COLUMN
FORM LENGTH	11 INCH
TOF POSITION	0.0 INCH
LEFT MARGIN	0.0INCH
FIT TO LETTER	ENABLE
TEXT HEIGHT	SAME
CONT PAPER MODE	OFF

## **FX EMULATION MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
CHARACTER PITCH	10 CPI
CHARACTER SET	IBM-457
SYMBOL SET	PC - 8
LETTER 0 STYLE	DISABLE
ZERO CHARACTER	NORMAL
LINE PITCH	6 LPI
WHITE PAGE SKIP	OFF
CR FUNCTUION	CR
LINE LENGTH	80 COLUMN
FORM LENGTH	11 INCH
TOF POSITION	0.0 INCH
LEFT MARGIN	0.0 INCH
FIT TO LETTER	ENABLE
TEXT HEIGHT	SAME
CONT PAPER MODE	OFF

## **PARALLEL MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
PARALLEL	enable
BI-DIRECTION	enable
ECP	enable
ACK WIDTH	narrow
ACK/BUSY TIMING	ack-in-busy
I-PRIME	disable
OFFLINE RECEIVE	DISABLE

## **USB MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
USB	Enable
SOFT RESET	disable
OFFLINE RECEIVE	DISABLE

## **NETWORK MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
TCP/IP	ENABLE
NETWARE	ENABLE
ETHERTALK	ENABLE
NETBEUI	ENABLE
FRAME TYPE	AUTO
DHCP/BOOTP	ENABLE
RARP	DISABLE
IP ADDRESS	0.0.0.0
SUBNET MASK	0.0.0.0
GATEWAY ADDRESS	0.0.0.0
PRINT SETTINGS	OFF
INITIALIZE	OFF

## **MEMORY MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
RECEIVE BUFF SIZE	AUTO
RESOURCE SAVE	OFF
FLASH INITIALIZE	[EXECUTE]
PS FLASH RESIZE	0.5Mb

## **SYSTEM ADJUST MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
X ADJUST	0.0 mm
Y ADJUST	0.0 mm
DUPLEX X ADJUST	0.0 mm
DUPLEX Y ADJUST	0.0 mm
TRAY1 A3 Nobi PAPER	TABLOID EXTRA
TRAY1 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY2 A3 Nobi PAPER	TABLOID EXTRA
TRAY2 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY3 A3 Nobi PAPER	TABLOID EXTRA
TRAY3 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY4 A3 Nobi PAPER	TABLOID EXTRA
TRAY4 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
TRAY5 A3 Nobi PAPER	TABLOID EXTRA
TRAY5 LEGAL14 PAPER	LEGAL 14
PCL TRAY2 ID#	5
PCL TRAY3 ID#	20
PCL TRAY4 ID#	21
PCL TRAY5 ID#	22
PCL MP TRAY ID#	4
DRUM CLEQNING	OFF
HEX DUMP	[EXECUTE]

## **MAINTENANCE MENU**

Item	Factory default setting
EEPROM RESET	[EXECUTE]
SAVE MENU	[EXECUTE]
RESTORE MENU	[EXECUTE]
POWER SAVE	ENABLE
PAPER BLACK SETTING	0
PAPER COLOR SETTING	0
TRANSPR BLACK SETTING	0
TRANSPR COLOR SETTING	0

## **USAGE MENU**

Displays printer page counts and data for printer consumables.

## **Software Utilities**

#### **OVERVIEW**

Included with your printer is a selection of software utility programs designed to help you get the most out of your printer. Load these programs from the Menu Installer located on CD1.

#### Utilities included:

- Color Utility
  - Color Swatch Utility
- Utilities for Maintenance and improved usability.
  - PDF Print Direct
  - Storage Device Manager for Windows
- Network Utilities
  - Print SuperVision
  - Network Printer Status
  - Oki LPR Utility

#### COLOR SWATCH UTILITY

## **Color Swatch Samples**

The Color Swatch Utility allows you to print color samples or swatches on your Oki color printer. The swatches are used with your software program to select and reproduce color accurately. The swatches represent selected samples of the Oki Color Printer's color palette and can be used to find the desired colors for your printed documents.

#### **NOTE**

- Your software may not be able to match colors using the swatch information. You may need to use other matching methods.
- The color swatch samples do not show all the colors your Oki Color Printer can print.
- Other factors influence how you see color: the color and finish of the paper, ambient light, even the color surrounding the one you are looking at.

## **Loading the Utility**

First, install the utility from CD1 using the Oki Menu Installer (Windows). To load the utility:

Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Programs  $\rightarrow$  Color Swatch  $\rightarrow$  Color Swatch Utility.

## **Selecting Colors**

When you load the utility, a swatch page displays commonly used colors. Select print to print sample pages.



## **Color Samples**

Use the color blocks to pick the specific colors that you want to appear in your printed document.

#### **Color Values**

Each color block, or sample, is identified with information your software package needs to reproduce that color accurately. The numbers under each block specify the amounts of the primary colors—red (R), green (G), and blue (B)—that mix to form each particular shade. The amounts are given as a numerical value between 0 and 255.

## **Creating Custom Swatch Colors**

If you don't find your desired color, you can create or customize colors:

- Select Custom Swatch from the File menu.
- On the pop-up window, there are 3 slide bars that allow you to customize swatches:
  - Hue bar changes the hue of the swatches.
     For example, red to green or blue to yellow.
  - Saturation bar changes vividness.
  - Lightness bar changes darkness.
- **3.** Adjust the bars until you see the desired color. Color variations are created to help you find the best match.
- **4.** Click **OK**, then print the custom swatch page.
- Repeat these steps if you still don't find the desired printed color.

#### NOTE

- The Swatch Utility does not guarantee that the printer will print the same color displayed on your monitor. Consider the displayed color as a reference.
- The printer may not be able to print the exact color that you desire.

For additional information, including **Applying Color Value in your Application**, and **Setting Monitor Color**, see the Swatch Utility Read-me file located in the Windows Programs list.

#### **PDF DIRECT PRINT UTILITY**

PDF Direct Print allows you to send a selected PDF file directly to the printer, a faster and easier process than using Adobe Acrobat separately before printing. PDF Direct Print also lets you set paper source, copies, 2-sided printing, print page range and other settings.

To use PDF Direct Print:

- An optional built-in hard disk must be installed
  - The built-in hard disk is standard on dxn models.
- 128MB or larger memory is recommended.
- Supports version PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4.0) or below.
- · A font environment on your system.

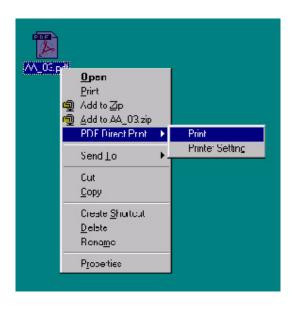
#### NOTE

Some PDF files may not be able to print correctly.

## **Starting**

To start PDF Direct Print:

- 1. Right-click on the file your want to print in Windows Explorer, or on the file icon on the Desktop.
- 2. Click PDF Direct Print, then click Print.



## The **Start** screen provides the following features:

- Select Print
- Paper Source
- Copies
- 2-sided printing
- Binding
- Collate
- Fit to page
- Print page range
- Restore Default
- Save Settings
- Print
- Cancel
- Help
- About

#### PDF Version Check

The version level of PDF files supported is version 1.3 or below. A "Warning" dialog displays for any PDF file whose version is not supported.

#### **NOTE**

If when attempting to PDF-direct-print a file, "ERROR:PDF to PS conversion failed" displays, the file contains an embedded font not installed on the system. Using Acrobat, delete the text that is embedded, or unembed the embedded font. In Acrobat, select Tool  $\rightarrow$  Touchup  $\rightarrow$  Text attribute. Remove the checkmark in the Embed box.

For additional information, see the PDF Print Direct **Help** file in the PDF Direct Print Utility.

#### STORAGE DEVICE MANAGER FOR WINDOWS

This Utility lets you manage the printer's hard disk and flash memory, and download fonts, macros and firmware.

Install the utility from CD1 using the Oki Menu Installer.

## **Getting Help**

The Oki Storage Device Manager software contains an on-line Help system.

To access it from the main Storage Device Manager screen, click **Help Topics** from the **Help** pull-down menu.

To access it from other Storage Device Manager screens, click the **Help** button.

#### NOTE

Storage Device Manager requires Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.0 or higher to run.

#### General Information

Storage Device Manager (SDM) provides a means of managing

- The printer's internal hard disk drive (standard on all dxn models): 10 GB [partitioned as Common, PCL and PostScript].
- The printer's flash memory (2 MB).
- Using the software improves the internal performance of the printer and provides a tool for downloading files from the computer to the printer's memory, including
  - Overlays such as logos, addresses, etc.
  - Graphic files
  - Forms such as letterheads, invoices, etc.

#### NOTE

The printer's internal hard drive does not communicate directly back to the Storage Device Manager software; it sends any error messages to the printer display. If things seems to be "stuck," go to the printer and check the display.

## **Summary of Storage Device Manager Functions**

- Create or modify a project.
- Download files to a printer.
- Add or remove printers being administered.
- Reboot the printer.
- Manage the Proof & Print and Secure Print spooler queues on the internal hard drive.
- Delete files from the internal hard disk or from the flash memory.
- View the status, configuration and variables for a printer.
- Print the demo page, PCL fonts list, or PostScript font list from a printer.
- Print one or more PCL format macros or PostScript forms (Overlays).

#### Administration

On network systems, the Administrator oversees the Storage Device Manager software and can use it to manage and monitor the printer's internal hard disk and flash memory.

#### **Administrator Functions**

The Administrator's Functions Feature lets you:

- Set up the Administrative Password.
- Establish 4-digit PIN numbers for each client, using any four numbers from 0 through 7 (8 and 9 cannot be used).

#### **NOTE**

If preferred, clients can choose their own PIN number, but the administrator will need to know these PINs in order to access client information.

- · Reboot the printer.
- Deletefiles (Show Resources is preferable).

#### **NOTE**

With Show Resources, you can browse to the file, click it, click Delete, then click OK to confirm the deletion. Using Administrator Functions to delete a file requires that you print out a File List, then use the information in the File List to type in the exact path (case sensitive) to the file. The file is deleted without confirmation.

Format the internal hard drive.

## **CAUTION!**

You can also use Storage Device Manager to format the partitions on the printer's hard drive, but this will wipe out all the contents of the partition and can cause serious problems. We recommend that you use the Show Resources and HDD Print Jobs features to maintain the disk.

## **Using Storage Device Manager**

#### **Opening the Program**

 Click Start → Programs → Oki → Oki Storage Device Manager → Oki Storage Device Manager.

The SDM - Printer Discovery dialog box opens.



2. Select the appropriate computer connection(s), then click Start.

The printer searches for connected printers and places icons in the window at the bottom of the dialog box.

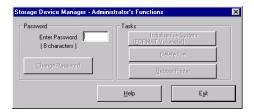
3. Click Exit.

The Storage Device Manager dialog box opens.



## **Setting Up an Administrative Password**

 With the Storage Device Manager program open, click Administrator Functions in the Printers menu.



#### NOTE

Passwords consist of eight digits, letters or numbers, and are case sensitive.

- 2. Type in the default password (p1xs7d0m) under Enter Password, then click Change Password.
- Type the 8-digit, alpha-numeric password of your choice under New Password.
- **4.** Type the password again under **Confirm New Password**. New Password Accepted appears.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Click Exit twice.

## **Creating PostScript Forms**

#### **NOTE**

PostScript forms are the ones to use if you are not experienced with PCL Macro commands.

## **Creating & Downloading a PostScript Project**

## Important!

Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.

#### Step 1: Create the Forms in Your Software Application

- 1. Create the document in your software application.
- Click File → Print and make sure the Oki PostScript driver is selected.
- 3. Select Print to file.
- 4. Engage the Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) output option.

#### Windows Me/98/95:

- Click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
- Click the PostScript tab, then, if it is not already selected, click Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).

#### Windows NT 4.0:

- Click Properties (or your application's equivalent).
- Scroll down to PostScript Options and click it, then click PostScript Output Option and select Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).
- 5. Click OK.
- **6.** Print the document to a file using the extension PRN.

## Step 2: Create a New Project

- 1. Open Storage Device Manager.
- 2. Click Projects → New Project.

The Project dialog box opens.

 Click Projects → Save Project, enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click Save.

#### Step 3: Add Files to the Project

1. Click Projects → Add File to Project.

The Open dialog box appears.

- Make sure PRN files (\*.prn) is selected in the Files of type drop-down list.
- **3.** Browse to the folder where the files are saved and select the files you wish to add to the project, then click **Open**.

The Information dialog box appears.

4. Click OK.

The files are saved as HST.

**5.** Repeat steps 1 through 4 until you have added all the files you wish to add to the Project.

#### NOTE

To delete a file from the project, click the file name, then click Projects  $\rightarrow$  Remove File from Project.

# Step 4: Check the Location for Storing the Files in the Printer's Memory

- If your printer is equipped with an internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager will automatically save the forms to the PostScript partition on the hard drive.
- If your printer does not have an internal hard disk drive, the Storage Device Manager will automatically store the forms in the PostScript section of the Flash memory.

To store the forms in the Flash memory instead of on the hard disk drive:

- Double-click the file name in the Project window.
   The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.
- 2. Under Volume, type in%Flash0%, then click OK.

#### Step 5: Save the Project and Download it to the Printer

- 1. Click Projects → Save Project.
- Click Projects → Send Project Files to Printer.
   Command Issued appears.
- 3. Click OK.

## Step 6: Test Print the Form

- With Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click Printers → Test Form.
  - The Test PostScript Form dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the file name for the form you wish to print (you can get this from the File List printout), then click **OK**.
  - Command Issued appears.
- 3. Click OK and wait for the form to print.

## **Creating PCL Macros (Forms)**

## **Important!**

Unless you are experienced with PCL macro commands, it is best to stay with the PostScript Forms.

There are two basic processes to producing PCL macros:

- A. Creating and downloading the PCL project
- **B**. Test printing the macro

### A: Creating and Downloading a PCL Project

## **Important!**

Remember that file names and paths are case sensitive.

#### Step 1: Create the Forms in Your Software Application

- 1. Create the document in your software application.
- Click File → Print and make sure the Oki PCL driver is selected.
- 3. Print the document to a file using the extension PRN.

#### Step 2: Create a New Project

- 1. Open Storage Device Manager.
- 2. Click Projects  $\rightarrow$  New Project.

The Project dialog box opens.

 Click Projects → Save Project, enter the path/name for storing the project on your hard drive or your network, then click Save.

### Step 3: Convert the Files to Binary (.bin) Format

1. Click Projects → Filter Macro File.

The Filter Printer Patterns dialog box appears.



2. Make any adjustments in the settings.

#### Example

If you create a black oval in MS Paint and leave all the color command filters checked, the black oval will print as a black rectangle when the overlay is used. To maintain the oval shape, turn off (deselect) the "Configure Image Data," "Palette ID," and "Palette Control" filters.

3. Click OK.

The Open dialog box appears.

- Make sure Print spool files (\*.prn) is selected in the File of type drop-down list.
- **5.** Under **Look in**, go to the folder where the files are saved and double-click the file name.

The file is saved as a bin file. Filter File Created appears.

- 6. Click OK.
- **7.** Repeat steps 1 through 6 until you have converted all the files you wish to add to the project.

## Step 4: Add the bin Files to the Project

#### NOTE

You can also add files to the project by opening either My Computer or Microsoft Explorer, browsing to the directory where the prn files are stored, then selecting the files and dragging them into the Project box.

- 1. Click Projects → Add File to Project.
  - The Open dialog box appears.
- 2. Highlight the.bin file you wish to add and click Open.
  - The file name appears in the Project dialog box.
- 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until all the files you wish to include in the project appear in the Project dialog box.

To delete a file from the project, click the file name, then click Projects → Remove File from Project.

### Step 5: Check.bin File Settings and Save the Project

- 1. To check the settings for the bin files, double-click the file name.

  The Edit Component Name and ID dialog box appears.
- 2. Here you can edit the
  - file name
  - ID number (the number you need to enter in the printer driver when printing overlays)
  - volume:
    - 0: = printer's disk drive PCL partition
    - 1: = printer's disk drive Common partition
    - %disk0%: = printer's disk drive PostScript partition
    - 2: = Flash memory PCL
    - %Flash0% = Flash memory PostScript
  - path.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. When you're through reviewing the settings, click  $Projects \rightarrow Save\ Project$ .

# Step 6: Download the Project to the Printer

- Click Projects → Send Project Files to Printer.
   Command Issued appears.
- 2. Click OK.

# **B: Test Printing PCL Macros**

- 1. With Storage Device Manager open and the appropriate printer icon highlighted, click **Printers** → **Test Macro**.
  - The Test Macro dialog box appears.
- 2. Enter the ID number for the macro file you wish to print (you can get this from the File List printout: look under Volume 0; e.g., for 2:OKI.BIN, enter 2), then click **OK**.
  - Command Issued appears.
- 3. Click OK and wait for the macro to print.

# **Printing the File List**

To print out a list of files in the printer's memory:

1. With Storage Device Manager open, click Printers  $\rightarrow$  Print File Listing.

Command Issued appears.

2. Click OK and wait for the File List to print.

#### NOTE

You can also print the File List from the printer's menu:

- Press MENU until INFORMATION MENU appears.
- Press ITEM until PRINT FILE LIST appears.
- Press SELECT.

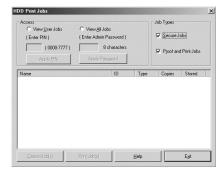
# **Maintaining the Internal Hard Drive and Flash Memory**

#### **HDD Print Jobs**

The HDD Print Jobs feature allows you to view and delete the Proof & Print and Secure Print files stored on the printer's internal hard drive.

- 1. Open Storage Device Manager and click the icon for the printer whose contents you wish to view.
- 2. Click Printers → HDD Print Jobs.

The HDD Print Jobs dialog box appears.



- Under Job Types, select Secure Jobs to view Secure Print jobs and/or Proof and Print Jobs to view Proof & Print jobs.
  - To view the jobs stored for a particular client, select View User Jobs under Access, then type in the client's 4-digit User PIN and press Enter.
  - To view all stored jobs, select View All Jobs and type in your Administrator's Password, then press Enter.

#### 4. Delete the files.

# **Important!**

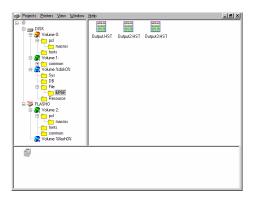
You will not be prompted to confirm the deletion.

- Click Cancel Job(s) to delete the files without printing them.
- Click Print Job(s) to print the files out before they are automatically deleted.

#### Show Resources

Use the Show Resources feature to delete files from the internal hard drive and flash memory.

- 1. Open Storage Device Manager and click the icon for the printer whose contents you wish to view.
- 2. Click Printers → Show Resources.



- **3.** Click the file(s) to be deleted (press Shift to select a span of files; press Ctrl to select additional files).
  - PCL Macro files are under Volume 0 (internal hard drive) or Volume 2 (flash memory).
  - PostScript Forms are under Volume &disk0% (internal hard drive) or%flash0% (flash memory).
- 4. Click Printers → Delete File(s).
- 5. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.
- **6.** Close the dialog box.

## **Using Overlays**

Before overlays can be printed, they must be created in a software application and saved as a print file, then downloaded to the printer's internal hard disk drive or flash memory using Storage Device Manager.

### **General Information**

To use overlays, the Oki Storage Device Manager software must be installed. It is recommended that the printer be equipped with the hard disk drive (standard on all Oki dxn models).

You can save logos, letterheads, etc. as overlays

on the printer's internal hard disk drive

Maximum available space

2 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms)

or

in the printer's flash memory

Available space limited to about

0.5 MB each for PCL Macros and PostScript Forms

You can then add one (or any combination of overlays) to a file as it is being printed.

#### Use overlays

- in place of pre-printed stationery
- to add your logo or company address to a document
- · to create forms from pre-stored modular pieces.

# **Important!**

When the hard disk drive is installed, you must use the Shutdown Menu before turning the printer off.

- Overlay elements must be created in the software application of your choice, then stored on the printer's hard drive using Storage Device Manager before they can be used.
- If the hard disk memory is insufficient for the spooled data, the message DISK FULL appears.
- If the software application has a collate print option, it must be turned OFF before you print overlays.
- Overlay printing cannot be done using the Windows 2000 PostScript driver or the Macintosh driver.

#### Windows 2000 and XP PCL

In Windows 2000, overlays can only be printed using the PCL driver.

### **Defining Overlays: 2000 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.

The OkiPrinting Preferences dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Click Define Overlays.
- 5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
- **6.** Under *ID Value*, enter the ID number for the file saved using the Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout).
- 7. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
- 8. Click Add, then click Close.

The overlay you defined appears in the Defined overlays list.

9. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

## **Printing Using Overlays: 2000 PCL**

- **1.** Open the document in the software application.
- 2. Click File → Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Under Defined Overlays, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.
  - Each name appears in the Active overlays box.
  - To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click the name under Defined Overlays, then click Test Print.
  - If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.
- 5. Click Print using active overlays, then click Print.

### **Editing Defined Overlays: 2000 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click Printing Preferences.

The Oki Printing Preferences dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Click Define overlays.

The Define overlays dialog box appears.

- 5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be edited.
- 6. Make your changes, then click Apply.
- 7. Click Close.
- 8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

# **Deleting Defined Overlays: 2000 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Printing** Preferences.

The Oki Printing Preferences dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- 4. Click Define Overlays.

The Define Overlays dialog box appears.

- 5. Under Defined overlays, click the overlay to be deleted.
- 6. Click Remove, then click Close.

## Windows Me/98/95 PCL

# Defining Overlays: Me/98/95 PCL

- **1.** Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click Properties.The Oki Properties dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab, click the Overlay button.
- 4. Click Define overlays.
- 5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
- **6.** Under ID Value, enter the ID number for the file saved using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout).
- 7. In the **Print on Pages** drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select **Custom** and enter specific page numbers under **Custom pages**.
- Click Add, then click Close.Each overlay you defined appears in the Defined overlay list.
- **9.** Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

## Printing Overlays: Me/98/95 PCL

- **1.** Open the document in the software application.
- 2. Click File → Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

3. Make sure the Oki PCL driver is selected, then click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).

The Oki Properties dialog box appears.

- 4. Click the Overlay tab.
- Under Defined Overlays, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.

The names appear in the Active overlays box.

- To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click its name in the **Defined overlays** box, then click **Test Print**.
- If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.
- Click Print using active overlays, then click OK and print the document.

### **Editing Defined Overlays: Me/98/95 PCL**

- **1.** Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click Properties.The Oki Properties dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- 4. Click Define overlays.

The Define overlays dialog box appears.

- 5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be edited.
- 6. Make any changes, then click Apply.
- 7. Click Close.
- 8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

# **Deleting Defined Overlays: Me/98/95 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- **2.** Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click **Properties**. *The Oki Properties dialog box appears.*
- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- **4.** Click **Define overlays**.

  The Define overlays dialog box appears.
- 5. Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be deleted.
- 6. Click Remove, then Close.
- 7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

## Windows Me/98/95/PostScript

### **Defining Overlays: Me/98/95 PostScript**

- **1.** Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.The Oki Properties dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the *Job Options* tab. Click the *Overlay* button.
- Set up an Overlay Group: Click New.
   The Define Overlays dialog box appears.
- Under Group Name, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
- 6. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
- 7. Under Overlay Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it was stored using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout), including the file extension HST.
  - Overlay file names are case sensitive.
- 8. Click Add.
- **9.** Repeat steps 7 and 8 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
- 10. Click OK.

To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 4 to 10 above.

#### **Finish**

**11.** Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

## Printing Using Overlays: Me/98/95 PostScript

- 1. Open the document in the software application.
- 2. Click File → Print.
- **3.** Make sure the Oki PostScript printer is selected, then click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).

The Oki Properties dialog box appears.

- 4. Click the Overlay tab.
- 5. Click Enable Overlay in the drop-down list.
- Click up to four groups under Defined Overlay, then click Add.
- 7. Click **OK** and print the document.

### **Editing Defined Overlays: Me/98/95 PostScript**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.

The Oki Properties dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- **4.** Under **Defined Overlay**, click the name of the group you wish to modify, then click **Edit**.

The Define Overlays dialog box appears.

**5.** Make your changes, then click **OK** twice and close the Printers dialog box.

## **Deleting Defined Overlays: Me/98/95 PostScript**

- **1.** Click Start  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$  Printers.
- Right click the Oki PostScript printer icon, then click Properties.
   The Oki Properties dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- **4.** Under **Defined Overlay**, click the name of the group you wish to remove, then click **Delete**.
- 5. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.
- 6. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

## Windows NT 4.0 PCL

### **Defining Overlays: NT 4.0 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Oki Default dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- 4. Click Define overlays.

The Define overlays dialog box appears.

- 5. Under Overlay Name, enter a name for the overlay.
- **6.** Under **ID Value**, enter the ID number for the file saved using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout).
- In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
- 8. Click Add, then click Close.

The overlays you defined will appear in the Defined overlays window.

**9.** Click **OK** and close the Printers dialog box.

### **Printing Overlays: NT 4.0 PCL**

1. Click File → Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

2. Make sure the Oki PCL driver is selected, then click **Properties** (or your application's equivalent).

The Oki Properties dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Overlay tab.
- Under Defined Overlays, click any overlays you wish to use (to select more than one, press the Ctrl key while selecting the names), then click Add.

The names appears in the Active overlays box.

#### **NOTE**

To print a sample of an overlay to see what it looks like, click its name in the Defined Overlays box, then click Test Print. If you wish to add more overlays to the list, click Define Overlays, then fill in the appropriate information in the Define overlays dialog box and click Close.

Click Print using active overlays, then click OK and print the document.

### **Editing Defined Overlays: NT 4.0 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- 2. Right click the PCL printer icon, then click **Document**Defaults.

The Oki Defaults dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- 4. Click Define Overlays.

The Define overlays dialog box appears.

- **5.** Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be edited.
- Make your changes, then click Apply.
- 7. Click Close.
- 8. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

## **Deleting Defined Overlays: NT 4.0 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the PCL printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Oki Defaults dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Job Options tab. Click the Overlay button.
- 4. Click Define Overlays.
- **5.** Under **Defined overlays**, click the overlay to be deleted.
- 6. Click Remove, then Close.
- 7. Click OK and close the Printers dialog box.

## **Defining Overlays: NT 4.0 PCL**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Default dialog box appears.

- 3. Scroll down to Layout, and click Overlay.
- 4. Under Change 'Overlay' Setting, click Use Overlay.
- 5. Click Setting of Overlay.

The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.

#### Set up an Overlay Group:

6. Click New.

The Define Overlays dialog box appears.

- **7.** Under **Group Name**, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
- In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
- Under Overlay Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it was stored using Storage Device Manager (see the File List printout).

Overlay file names are case sensitive.

- 10. Click Add.
- **11.** Repeat steps 9 and 10 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
- 12. Click OK.

To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 6 to 11 above.

## Save Your Settings

13. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

# Windows NT 4.0 PostScript

## **Defining Overlays: NT 4.0 PostScript**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the Oki PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Default dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Job Options, and click Overlay.
- 4. Click New.

The Define Overlays dialog box appears.

- **5.** Under **Overlay Name**, enter a name for the group of overlays you are creating.
- 6. In the Print on Pages drop-down list, select on which pages the overlay is to be printed, or select Custom and enter specific page numbers under Custom pages.
- 7. Under Form Name, type in the name of the overlay file exactly as it was stored using the Storage Device Manager software (see the File List printout), including the file extension. HST.

Overlay file names are case sensitive.

- 8. Click Add.
- **9.** Repeat steps 9 and 10 to add additional overlays (maximum of three per group).
- 10. Click OK.

To create additional overlay groups (up to 32 can be defined), repeat steps 6 to 11 above.

11. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

### **Printing Using Overlays: NT 4.0 PostScript**

- 1. Open the document in the software application.
- 2. Click File → Print.

The Print dialog box appears.

- 3. Scroll down to Layout, then click Use Overlay.
- 4. Click Setting of Overlay.

The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.

- Select the Overlay group(s) you wish to print, then click Add.The group will appear in the Active Overlay Groups list.
- **6.** Click **OK** twice and print the document.

### **Editing Defined Overlays: NT 4.0 PostScript**

- 7. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Oki Defaults dialog box appears.

- **9.** Scroll down to **Layout**, and click **Overlay**.
- 10. Click Setting of Overlay.

The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.

**11.** Under **Defined Overlay Groups**, click the name of the group you wish to modify, then click **Edit**.

The Define Overlays dialog box appears.

- 12. Make your changes, then click OK.
- **13.** Click **OK** twice and close the Printers dialog box.

### **Deleting Defined Overlays: NT 4.0 PostScript**

- 1. Click Start → Settings → Printers.
- Right click the PostScript printer icon, then click Document Defaults.

The Default dialog box appears.

- 3. Scroll down to Layout, and click Overlay.
- 4. Click Setting of Overlay.

The Setting of Overlay dialog box appears.

- Click the name of the Defined Overlay Group you wish to remove, then click Delete and click Yes to confirm the deletion.
- 6. Click OK twice and close the Printers dialog box.

#### **Additional Information**

For more information, click **Help** in the Storage Device Manager program.

#### PRINTSUPERVISION

PrintSuperVision is a web-based application for managing printing devices connected to a network. PrintSuperVision provides access to networked printer data for monitoring, reporting and managing networked printers. It provides a full range of management functions for Oki printers, and for other brands of printers as well.

#### **Features**

- Provides real-time status of all your printers to monitor and report printer usage, manage consumables usage and replenishment.
- Administrator interface to the system is via a standard web browser enabling you to check on printer status and compatible multi-function devices from anywhere on the web.
- Performs initial discovery and configuration of printing devices connected to network.
- · View groups of printers by list, floorplan or maps.
- Monitors devices over time, including maintenance data, and saves data for statistical reports.
- Sends mail alerts of events affecting device functionality.
- Generates reports on-screen or in XHTML, Excel and XML formats, plus Text and CSV formats.
- Integrates with Oki Data's on-line web support.

## **Types of Users**

- Guest users, without username, can get basic information about devices, such as type, status and location of printing devices.
- Standard users, in addition to guest user information, standard users can get information about printing resources, configure e-mail alerts, and get basic statistics reports.
- Administrators can manage devices, maps, alerts, user accounts, maintenance data, and create comprehensive statistics reports.

## **Typical usage scenarios**

- The network administrator in a large organization can get customized daily reports of the status of all printers including usage reports. User accounts can be configured so that a person in each department can manage their local printers.
- The system can be set to alert the local user and the administrator of problems. The administrator can log into the PrintSuperVision system from any client machine and manage printers on different sites, looking at a map view to see instantly the status of all the printers.
- The administrator can keep a close track of the cost of the printers including tracking maintenance. PrintSuperVision also provides a consumables prediction facility to advise when consumable will need replacing based on current printer usage (Oki color printers).

# **System Requirements**

#### **Server Software**

Pentium 75, 64MB or better with CD support running:

- Windows 98 with Microsoft Personal Web Server Version<sup>™</sup>, available for free download from Microsoft<sup>™</sup> as Option Pack 4.0.
- Windows NT4 Workstation, SP6.0a, Microsoft Personal Web Server Version, available for free download from Microsoft as Option Pack 4.0
- Windows 2000 or NT4 Server SP6.0a, Microsoft IIS™, available for free download from Microsoft as Option Pack 4.0

#### **Client Software**

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.01 or above
- Netscape Navigator 4.0 or above
- Recommended minimum screen resolution of 1024 x 768 pixels

#### **Additional Information**

For more information, click on **Help** in the PrintSuperVision program.

### **NETWORK PRINTER STATUS UTILITY**

This utility creates an additional tab (STATUS) in the PostScript and PCL drivers that allows the client to monitor the selected printer's status.

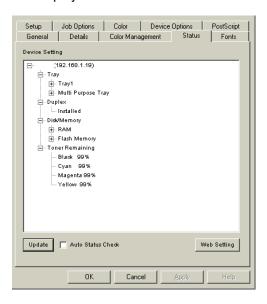
#### To Install

- 1. Insert the Oki CD1 into the CD-ROM drive.
  - If CD does not AutoPlay, click Start  $\rightarrow$  Run  $\rightarrow$  Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM and double-click Install.exe, then click OK.
- 2. Click Network Software → Administration Tools → Network Printer Status. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## **To Open**

- Click Start → Settings → Printers. Right-click the Oki Printer icon, click Properties.
- 2. Click on the STATUS tab.

**3.** Click the **UPDATE** button to see device settings. The following screen displays:



Click on an item to see this information:

Trays: Paper Type, weight

Duplex: Installed/not installed

Disk/Memory: RAM size and % used;

Flash Memory size and % used

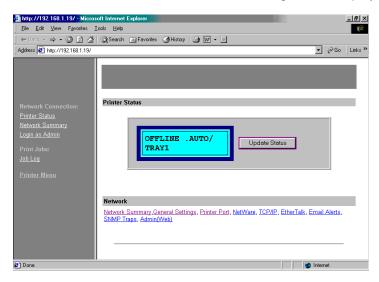
Toner Remaining: % toner remaining is all cartridges

#### **NOTE**

If the Automatic Status Check box is checked, this utility will "ping" the printer each time you open the Printer Properties dialog in the printer driver. This will severely slow down the opening of this dialog.

# **Checking the Printer Status**

Click the WEB SETTING button. The following screen displays:



Click on the items listed on the left to see:

- Network Summary
- Login for Administrators
- Job Login
- Printer Menu

To see real-time printer status, click the **UPDATE STATUS** button.

#### OKI LPR UTILITY

Oki LPR Utility allows you to print directly to a printer on the network without a print server. It creates an Oki Printer Port, and installs a pop-up status box so you can monitor printer status.

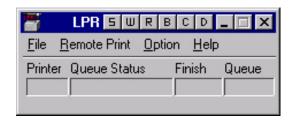
Oki LPR operates in Windows Me/98/95, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, and Windows XP operating systems.

#### How to Install

The Oki LPR Utility supports TCP/IP. Your network administrator will first need to set up an IP address and TCP/IP properties for your printer.

- To install the utility, insert the Oki CD1 into the CD-ROM drive.
   If CD does not AutoPlay, click Start → Run → Browse. Browse to your CD-ROM driver and double-click Install.exe, then click OK.
- 2. Click Network Software  $\rightarrow$  Installation/Config  $\rightarrow$  LPR Utility. Follow the on-screen instructions.

#### Oki LPR Status Box



The Oki LPR Utility Status Box displays the following information:

- Printers: Names of added printers (You can add up to 30 printers)
- Status: LPR Utility status (empty, connecting, sending, paused, checking status, not connected)
- · Finish: Number of completed jobs.
- · Queue: Number of jobs waiting to be printed.

#### **Additional Information**

For help using the Oki LPR Utility, click on **HELP** in the program.

Windows XP 146
Color matching
Windows Me/98/95 269
Color matching, PostScript
Windows 2000 201
Windows NT 352
Windows XP 120
Color printing factors
Windows 2000 191
Windows NT 343
Windows XP 110
Color swatch utility 483
Color swatch utility, PCL
Windows 2000 200
Windows NT 351
Windows XP 119
Color swatch utility,PCL
Windows Me/98/95 272
Components 23
Confidential documents
Windows 2000 232
Windows Me/98/95 302
Windows NT 383
Windows XP 150
Connection
Power cable 38
Control panel 40
Custom page sizes
Windows 2000 213
Windows Me/98/95 285
Windows NT 362
Windows XP 132
_
D
Disk Maintenance 74
Display language 43
Drivers, printer
Windows 2000 171

Windows Me/98/95 252	Windows Me/98/95 297
Drivers,printer	Fuser unit 416
Windows NT 322	
Windows XP 89	Н
Duplex printing	Hard disk 448
Windows 2000 219	Hard disk drive
Windows Me/98/95 290	Windows 2000 174
Windows NT 372	Windows Me/98/95 255
Windows XP 138	Windows NT 325
Duplex unit 451	Windows XP 92
enabling in Windows 2000 driver	High capacity feeder 460
178	enabling in Windows 2000 driver
enabling in Windows Me/98/95	180
driver 257	enabling in Windows Me/98/95
enabling in Windows NT driver	driver 258
329	enabling in Windows XP driver
enabling in Windows XP driver	98
96	ı
F	Image drum 411
Enabling installed options	Information Menu 53
Windows Me/98/95 253	information Went 33
Windows XP 90	L
	LED head 419
Envelope types 48	Location 22
Error messages 422	
F	М
Factors that affect Color Printing	Maintenance
Windows 2000 191	Cleaning LED head 419
Windows NT 343	Fuser unit 416
Windows XP 110	Image drum 411
Finisher	Toner cartridge 405
enabling in Windows 2000 driver	Transfer belt 414
182	Maintenance Menu 77
enabling in Windows NT driver	Manual feed 37
333	Media default
enabling in Windows XP driver	in the Windows 2000 printer
100	driver 184
Font substitution	

in the Windows NT printer driver	Optional paper trays
335	enabling in Windows 2000 driver
Media Menu 55	176
Memory, enabling	enabling in Windows Me/98/95
Windows 2000 172	driver 256
Windows Me/98/95 253	enabling in Windows NT driver
Windows NT 323	327
Windows NT driver 323	enabling in Windows XP driver
Windows XP 91	94 Options
Windows XP driver 91	Additional memory 444
Menu settings 44	
	Additional paper trays 456
N	CCS Copier Unit 464
Network Menu 71	Duplex unit 451
Network Printer Status utility	High capacity feeder 460
Windows 2000 189	Internal hard disk 448
Windows Me/98/95 261	Options, enabling in
Windows NT 341	Windows 2000 driver 172 Overlays
Windows XP 108	Windows 2000 238
Network printer status utility 535	Windows Me/98/95 308
N-up printing	Windows NT 390
Windows 2000 211	
Windows Me/98/95 283	Windows XP 156
Windows NT 359	Р
Windows XP 130	Paper
0	Feed 45
OKI color matching	Manual feed 37
Windows 2000 202	Sizes 46
Windows Me/98/95 276	Types 48
Windows NT 354	Paper feed default
Windows XP 121	in the Windows 2000 printer
OKI LPR utility 538	driver 184
OKI LFK utility 538 OKI using ICC profiles	in the Windows NT printer driver
Windows Me/98/95 282	335
OKI Using ICC Profiles feature	Paper jams 425
Windows 2000 207	Paper size default
Windows XP 126	in the Windows 2000 printer
	driver 184

Printing in the Windows NT printer driver 335 Booklets 375 Parallel Menu 71 PrintSuperVision 532 Proof and print PDF direct print utility 486 Windows 2000 229 Posters Windows 2000 251 Windows Me/98/95 298 Windows Me/98/95 320 Windows NT 380 Windows NT 401 Windows XP 147 Windows XP 169 Protective sheet removal 26 PostScript color matching R Windows 2000 204 Rendering intents Windows Me/98/95 278 Windows 2000 205 Windows NT 356 Windows Me/98/95 279 Windows XP 123 Windows NT 357 Power cable 38 Windows XP 123 Print Jobs Menu 53 Resolution Print Menu 55 Windows 2000 218 Printer Windows Me/98/95 289 Changing display language 43 Windows NT 370 Components 23 Windows XP 137 Control panel 40 Location 22 S Menu settings 44 Secure print Unpacking 20 Windows 2000 232 Printer drivers Windows Me/98/95 302 Windows 2000 171 Windows NT 383 Windows Me/98/95 252 Windows XP 150 Windows NT 322 Setting up Windows XP 89 Power cable 38 Printer settings Protective sheet removal 26 Confirming 52 Toner cartridge installation 29 List of settings 53 Software utilities 482 Printing menu list 52 Status messages 422 Printer status utility Status utility Windows 2000 189 Windows 2000 189 WIndows Me/98/95 261 Windows Me/98/95 261 Windows NT 341 Windows NT 341 Windows XP 108

Windows XP 108	changing media defaults in the
Storage device manager 490	driver 184
Store to hard disk	choosing a color matching
Windows 2000 235	method 194
Windows Me/98/95 305	collating 228
Windows NT 387	color matching 201
Windows XP 153	color swatch utility, PCL 200
System Adjust Menu 75	confidential documents 232
System Config. Menu 62	custom page sizes 213
_	duplex printing 219
Т	enabling added memory in the
Toner cartridge 405	driver 172
Toner cartridge installation 29, 405	enabling optional paper trays in
Transfer belt 414	the driver 176
Transporting 420	enabling the duplex unit in the
Troubleshooting	driver 178
Miscellaneous problems 441	enabling the finisher in the driver
Paper jams 425	182
U	enabling the hard disk drive in
-	the driver 174 enabling the high capacity feeder
Unpacking 20	in the driver 180
Usage Menu 77 Utilities	factors that affect color printing
color swatch 483	191
network printer status 535	network printer status utility 189
OKI LPR 538	n-up printing 211
	OKI using ICC profiles feature
pdf direct print 486	207
PrintSuperVision 532	operation 190
storage device manager 490	overlays 238
W	posters 251
Watermarks	printer drivers 171
Windows 2000 226	proof and print 229
Windows Me/98/95 294	rendering intents 205
Windows NT 377	resolution 218
Windows XP 144	secure print 232
Windows 2000	store to hard disk 235
booklets 222	watermarks 226
	watermarks 220

printer drivers 252 Windows ICM color matching 210 proof and print 298 Windows ICM Color Matching rendering intents 279 Windows 2000 210 resolution 289 Windows XP 129 secure print 302 Windows ICM color matching store to hard disk 305 Windows Me/98/95 281 watermarks 294 Windows Me Windows ICM color matching booklets 292 281 Windows Me/98/95 Windows NT operation 262 booklets 375 Windows Me/98/95 changing media defaults in the choosing a color matching driver 335 method 266 choosing a color matching collating 296 method 346 color matching 266 collating 379 color swatch utiliy, PCL 272 color matching 352 confidential documents 302 color swatch utility, PCL 351 custom page sizes 285 confidential documents 383 duplex printing 290 custom page sizes 362 enabling added memory in the duplex printing 372 driver 253 enabling added memory in the enabling optional paper trays 256 driver 323 enabling the duplex unit in the enabling optional paper trays in driver 257 the driver 327 enabling the hard disk drive in enabling the duplex unit in the the driver 255 drive 329 enabling the high capacity feeder enabling the finisher in the driver in the driver 258 333 factors that affect color printing enabling the hard disk drive in 263 the driver 325 font substitution 297 enabling the high capacity feeder network printer status ultility 261 in the driver 331 n-up printing 283 factors that affect color printing OKI ICC profiles feature 282 operation 262 network printer status utility 341 overlays 308 n-up printing 359 posters 320 operation 342

overlays 390 posters 401 printer drivers 322 proof and print 380 rendering intents 357 resolution 370 secure print 383 store to hard disk 387 watermarks 377 Windows XP booklets 141 choosing a color matching method 113 collating 146 color matching 120 color swatch utility, PCL 119 confidential documents 150 custom page sizes 132 duplex printing 138 enabling added memory in the driver 91 enabling optional paper trays in the driver 94 enabling the duplex unit in the driver 96 enabling the finisher in the driver 100 enabling the hard disk drive in the driver 92 enabling the high capacity feeder in the driver 98 factors that affect color printing 110 network printer status utility 108 n-up printing 130 OKI using ICC profiles feature 126 operation 109

overlays 156
posters 169
printer drivers 89
proof and print 147
rendering intents 123
resolution 137
secure print 150
store to hard disk 153
watermarks 144
Windows ICM color matching 129